
AL ADWAA
Gem
CONNECT
2024
5th
PRIM.
SECOND TERM
EN
نسخة تجريبية للمدرسين
هدية مجانية



Contents



Theme 3 My society

Theme 4 Being responsible



Unit 7

Homes in Egypt

منازل فى مصر

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises 

Al-Azhar 

Answers 100% 

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن المنازل المصرية الآن وفى مصر القديمة.
- talk about the home and furniture.
  - يتحدث عن المنزل والأثاث.
- read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.
  - يقرأ، يفهم، ويستمع إلى محادثة قصيرة عن منازل مختلفة.
- understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.
  - يفهم ويستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط ليتحدث عن أحداث فى الماضى.
- learn how to say double vowels.
  - يتعلم كيف ينطق أصوات حروف متحركة مزدوجة.
- write a simple blog about an unusual home.
  - يكتب مدونة بسيطة عن منزل غير عادى.

Did you know?

- In Ancient Egypt, *mud bricks kept the inside of the house cool in hot weather. Small windows and *vents on the roof let air into the house.

I can find it out!

- There were different types of houses in Ancient Egypt. The "reed huts" were *constructed from papyrus, reeds, and animals' skin. The "mud brick house" is a simple *structure for poorer people. The "*merchant home", was constructed of mud, but it was *larger.

* mud bricks	طوب طينى	* vents	فتحات	* constructed	تم بناؤها
* structure	بناء	* merchant	تاجر	* larger	أكبر



Lesson 1

The Home المنزل





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



elevator
مصعد



closet
خزانة



cushion
وسادة



oven
فرن



balcony
بلكونة



armchair
كرسي ذو ذراعين



television
تلفاز



shower
دش



bed
سرير



bedroom
غرفة النوم



living room
غرفة المعيشة



kitchen
مطبخ



bathroom
حمام

Extra vocabulary

apartment	شقة	modern (adj.)	حديث	part	جزء
closer (adj.)	أقرب	better (adj.)	أفضل	easier (adj.)	أسهل
space	مساحة	traditional (adj.)	تقليدى	gift	هدية
lovely (adj.)	جميل	fantastic (adj.)	رائع	own (adj.)	خاص

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
move	ينتقل	moved	share	يشارك	shared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	say	يقول	said

Expressions and Phrases

welcome to ...	مرحبًا بك فى ...	Come in!	تفضل بالدخول!
How long ...?	كم المدة...؟ (للسؤال عن فترة زمنية)	since I was born	منذ ولادتى
had to + (inf.) ...	اضطر إلى ...	What a great view!	يا له من منظر رائع!

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Fareeda moved to a new apartment. - انتقلت فريدة إلى شقة جديدة.
- The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. - المطبخ الجديد أكبر، والفرن أكثر حداثة.
- They have three bedrooms now. - لديهم ثلاث غرف نوم الآن.
- Fareeda can share a bedroom with her sister. - من الممكن أن تشارك فريدة غرفة النوم مع أختها.

Check point

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 I share my (living room – bathroom – bedroom – kitchen) with my sister. There are two beds for us.

2 I always take the (oven – elevator – cushion – closet) to my apartment on the 7th floor.

3 I put my clothes in the (oven – living room – closet – kitchen).

4 There are two colorful (TVs – showers – ovens – cushions) on the sofa.

Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Why is Fareeda happy? لماذا فريدة سعيدة؟



Fareeda: Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

أهلًا دينا، مرحبًا بك فى شقتى الجديدة! تفضلى بالدخول!



Dina: Thanks! Do you like living here?

شكرًا ! هل تحبين العيش هنا؟



Fareeda: I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

أحبها! إنها شقة رائعة! أحب هذا الجزء من المدينة وهى أكبر من شقتنا القديمة.



Dina: How long did you live in your old apartment?

كم المدة التى عِشتها بشقتك القديمة؟



Fareeda: Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

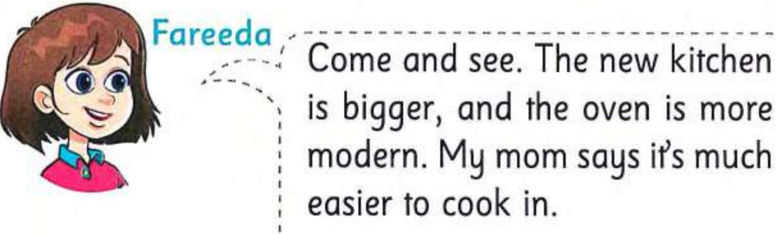
اثنا عشر عامًا، منذ ولادتى. ثم كان على والدى الانتقال إلى وظيفة جديدة، ولذلك انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.





Dina: So, what's better about this new apartment?

إذًا، ما الأفضل بهذه الشقة الجديدة؟



Fareeda: Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

تعالَىْ لترى. المطبخ الجديد أكبر، والفرن أكثر حداثة. تقول أمى إن الطهى فيه أسهل بكثير.





Dina

Very nice. And this is the living room?

لطيف جدًا. وهذه هى غرفة المعيشة؟



Fareeda

Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.

نعم، كما ترين، هناك مساحة أكبر ولذلك يمكننا أن نملك تلفازًا أكبر. انظرى إلى هذه الوسادات التقليدية. لقد كانت هدية من جدتى.



Dina

Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?

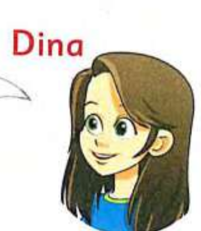
أووه، نعم! ماذا عن غرف النوم؟



Fareeda

We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

لدينا ثلاث غرف نوم الآن. أنا أتشارك غرفة مع أختى، أميرة، لكن غرفتنا كبيرة حقًّا، ولدينا حمامان.



Dina

It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic, too – what a great view!

هذا لطيف! البلكونة رائعة أيضًا – ياله من منظر رائع!

Check point

1 How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment?

....

2 How long did Fareeda live in the old apartment?

....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. I can .... a room with my sister, the bedroom is really big.
   a) share b) cook c) move d) live
2. We have a big .... with a great view, I can see the whole street.
   a) oven b) cushion c) closet d) balcony
3. He lives in a big .... in Orabi Street.
   a) tent b) boat c) mountain d) apartment
4. We have got a new .... in the kitchen.
   a) cushion b) sofa c) oven d) shower

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4
اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

bedrooms – years – new – old – move

I moved to a new apartment last month. Our ....(1)............ apartment is much bigger than the old one. I lived in the old apartment for twelve ....(2)............ .Then my parents had to ....(3)............ to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment. We have three ....(4)............ now. I share a room with my sister.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

My name is Logy. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love living here in this new apartment. I like this part of town, and it's much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. It is much easier to cook in. The living room is bigger than the old one, so we can have a bigger television.
We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Dareen, but our bedroom is really big. I like our new apartment.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about Logy's ....
   a) new school b) new friends
   c) new apartment d) new class

2 The new apartment is .... than the old one.

a) smaller b) hotter c) bigger d) colder

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why does Logy love the new apartment?

....

4 How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جملًا: 4

1 share – room – sister – a – my – I – with.

....

2 new – more – oven – The – modern – is.

....

3 better – this – What's – about – apartment?

....

4 cushions – gift – a – from – were – These – Grandma.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 1

Why is fareeda happy

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 30 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

"My new apartment"

much bigger – three bedrooms – big balcony

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2

My Perfect Room

غرفتي المثالية



Language Focus



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

1. Telling where things are الإخبار عن أماكن الأشياء



On the right, ...

على اليمين، ...



On the left, ...

على اليسار، ...



In the middle of the room, ...

في منتصف الحجرة، ...



On the wall, ...

على الحائط، ...

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

أنا أحب غرفة نومى. أشارك الغرفة مع أختى. على اليمين، يوجد سريرى بجانبه مكتب. على اليسار، هناك سرير أختى. يوجد فى منتصف الغرفة كرسى بذراعين مع وسادتين وخزانة كبيرة. على الحائط، هناك الكثير من ملصقات الحيوانات.

desk	مكتب	posters	ملصقات

Check point

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. On the (right – wall – desk – middle), there is my bed.
2. There is an armchair (in – on – at – by) the middle.
3. There are lots of posters (in – on – at – by) the wall.
4. (In – On – At – By) the left, there's a desk next to the wall.
5. (On – In – At – By) the middle of the room, there is an armchair.



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

2. The prefix "un-" البادئة "-un"

unfriendly	غير ودود	not kind to someone غير طيب مع شخص ما
uncomfortable	غير مريح	something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body شيء لا تشعر بالراحة عندما تستخدمه للجلوس أو عند ارتدائه
unlucky	غير محظوظ	something bad happens to you without a reason شيء سيئ يحدث لك بدون سبب
unsafe	غير آمن	dangerous خطر
unhappy	غير سعيد	sad حزين
unfair	غير عادل	something that happens that isn't morally right or fair شيء يحدث غير صحيح أخلاقيًّا أو عادل

Check point

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 Omar lost the match last week; he was (unfriendly – unlucky – unfair – unsafe).
2 Don't climb that mountain; it's (unhappy – unsafe – unfriendly – unfair).
3 I don't like sitting on that armchair; it's (unfriendly – unlucky – uncomfortable – unhappy).
4 He doesn't like being with people. He is always (unfair – unfriendly – unhappy – unlucky).
5 The jeans are very (comfortable – comfort – fair – uncomfortable). I can't wear them.
6 Don't go down in the street in the dark alone. It's (unhappy – unsafe – unlucky – unfair). SB

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage: الاستخدام

Something that happened once: شيء ما حدث لمرة واحدة:

e.g. I visited her house when I was five. زرت منزلها عندما كنت بعمر الخامسة.

Something that happened several times in the past: شيء ما حدث لعدة مرات فى الماضى:

e.g. We went to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

ذهبنا لمنزل عمتى على الشاطئ فى كل صيف.

Something that was true for some time in the past: شيء ما كان حقيقة لفترة من الزمن فى الماضى:

e.g. He loved living in his grandmother's apartment as a child.

كان يحب العيش فى شقة جدته عندما كان طفلًا.

Expressions with "ago": التعبيرات مع "ago":

e.g. I met her in Zagazig two years ago. لقد قابلتها فى مدينة الزقازيق منذ سنتين.

Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة

Subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + (d/ed/ied)... .

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed): want → wanted
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d): die → died
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y) يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ied): carry → carried
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن: stop → stopped

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل ..... .

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
come	يأتى	came	eat	يأكل	ate	go	يذهب	went
know	يعرف	knew	meet	يقابل	met	tell	يخبر	told
set	يجهز	set	am/is	يكون (للمفرد)	was	are	يكون (للجمع)	were
do	يفعل	did	have	يملك	had	say	يقول	said
can	يستطيع	could	see	يرى	saw	take	يأخذ	took

Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل... .

I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question.

أنا لم أكن أعرف الإجابة عن سؤال المعلم.

Yes/No question: السؤال بـ(هل)

A: Did + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل...?

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.



A: Did you travel all over Egypt?

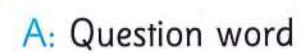
B: Yes, I did.



A: Did you eat Om Ali yesterday?

B: No, I didn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام أدوات الاستفهام



A: Question word	did	subject	(inf.) مصدر الفعل...?

B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل ..... .

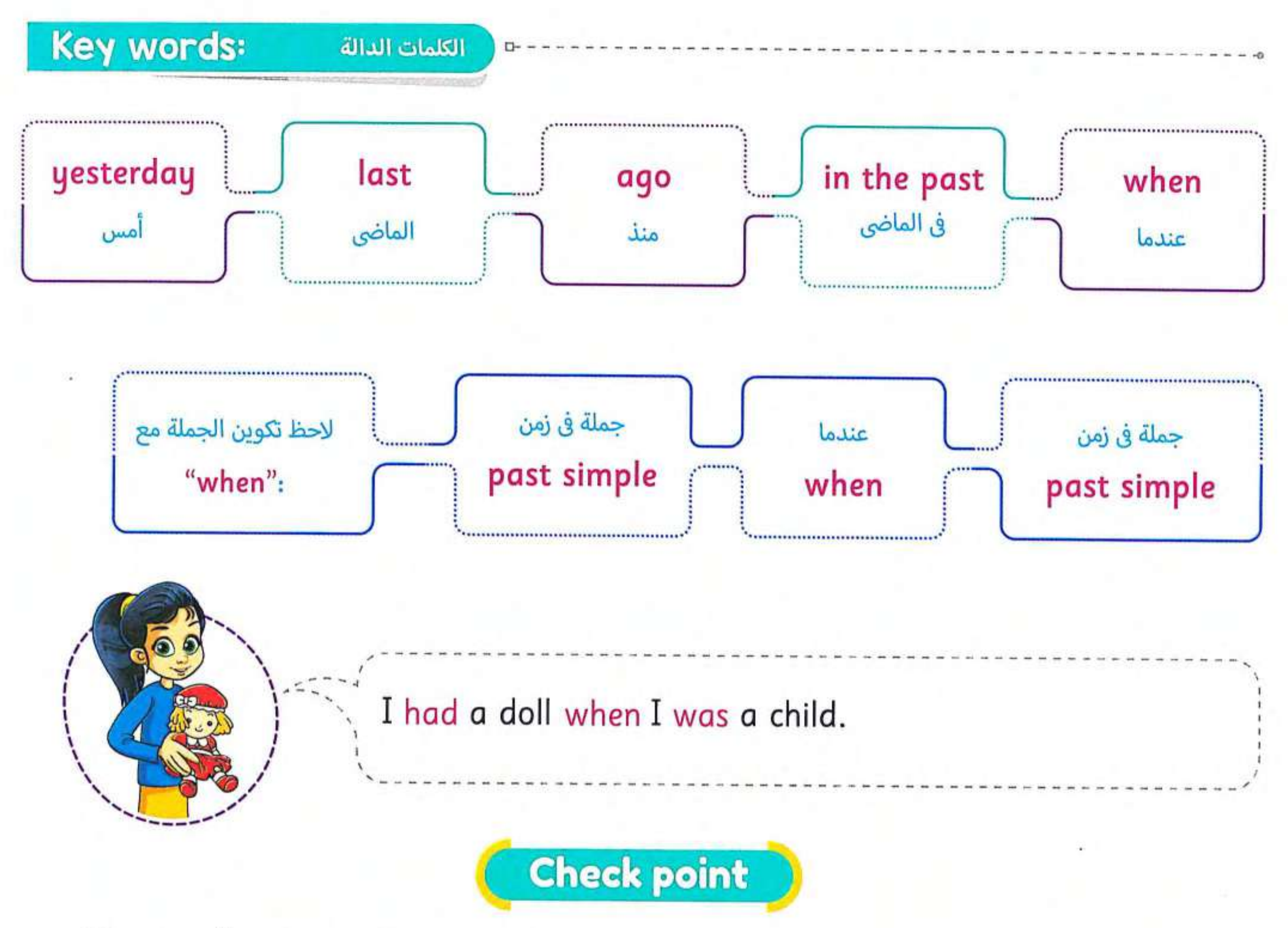


A: When did it rain?

B: It rained yesterday.



- عند الإجابة تحول "you" فى السؤال إلى "I" أو "We".



Check point

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 I (help – helped – am helping – helping) my mom carry our heavy cases yesterday.

2 I (don't – didn't – wasn't – doesn't) travel to America when I was a child.

3 Did you (visit – visited – visiting – visits) your grandma last holiday?

4 I went to Luxor when I (am – is – was – were) 10 years old.

5 (Do – Does – Did – Are) your brother go swimming last week?

6 The students (write – wrote – writes – writing) stories for homework yesterday.

7 We (see – saw – sees – seeing) Ali in town last week.

8 He had an accident two weeks (often – ago – now – last).

9 My mother didn't (went – going – go – goes) to work because she was ill.

10 I (have – has – having – had) a toy car when I was young.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening happened to him and he was lucky he lived to tell me about it!



Howler monkeys in the jungle

عمى عالم ويحب الحيوانات. عندما كان أصغر، سافر كثيرًا إلى أمريكا الجنوبية للعمل. لقد أحب المكان هناك لأن الناس كانوا ودودين للغاية وساعدوه فى عمله. ثم، منذ حوالى ثلاث سنوات، شىء ما مخيف حدث له وكان محظوظًا لأنه عاش ليخبرني به!

He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A local villager told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be unsafe."

كان عمى مهتمًا جدًّا بالقردة العواء «قردة أمريكية» وأراد إجراء بعض الأبحاث على مجموعات عائلاتهم. أخبره قروى محلى بمكان عائلة قرد العواء فى مكان قريب وكان سعيدًا جدًّا. لكن القروى قال أيضًا، «غدًا، سوف تتساقط أمطار غزيرة لذا قد يكون الوضع غير آمن».

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very close to them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain. Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very frightened.

Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy indeed!

انطلق عمى فى البحث عن عائلة قرد العواء وسرعان ما أصبح فى العمق فى الأدغال. كان يسمع القرود ونظر إلى الأعلى. وعلم أنه قريب جدًّا منها. ثم بدأ المطر. كانت أمطارًا غزيرة جدًّا. سرعان ما أصبح الماء فى كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق حتى يتقدم أو يرجع. فجأة، تدفق الكثير من الماء حاملًا إياه للأسفل إلى النهر. كان خائفًا جدًّا. فجأة، رأى يدًا و كان شخص ما يصيح، كان القروى. أخذ يد العم وقال: «الآن أنت بأمان!» كان عمى سعيدًا جدًّا حقًّا!

Extra vocabulary

scientist	عالم	friendly (adj.)	ودود	frightening (adj.)	مخيف
lucky (adj.)	محظوظ	howler monkeys	قرود العواء (قرود أمريكية)	villager	قروى
unsafe (adj.)	غير آمن	deep in	فى أعماق	jungle	الأدغال
path	طريق	go forward	يتقدم للأمام	indeed	حقا

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: 6

1 Omar loves his ....
(a. bedroom – b. kitchen – c. living room – d. balcony)

2 On the right, there is a/an .... with two cushions.
(a. armchair – b. bed – c. couch – d. chair)

3 On the left, there is a ....
(a. television – b. computer – c. poster – d. closet)

4 Omar loves watching television ....
(a. in the evening – b. in the afternoon – c. in the morning – d. at night)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 5

1 Where .... you go yesterday?
a) do b) does c) did d) doing

2 When something isn't morally right or fair, it is ....
a) unlucky b) unfair c) unhappy d) unsafe

3 It .... heavily when I was in the jungle.
a) rain b) rains c) rained d) raining

4 She didn't .... to school last week.
a) come b) came c) to come d) comes

5 My dad traveled a lot .... he was younger.
a) yesterday b) last c) when d) ago

3 Read the text and answer the questions:
اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. He is very interested in howler monkeys and does research into their family groups. Howler monkeys are the loudest of all monkeys. After one group of howlers calls, another group answers. Each family group is generally made up of 15 to 20 howlers. These monkeys live in Central and South America. Howlers mainly eat leaves, as well as fruits, nuts, and flowers. Howler monkeys get almost all the water they need from the food they eat.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Howler monkeys are the .... of all monkeys.

a) fastest b) tallest c) shortest d) loudest

2 "Do research" means ....

a) get information b) play c) travel d) help

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where do howler monkeys live?

....

4 What do howler monkeys eat?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جملًا: 4

1 ago – met – years – her – I – two.

....

2 you – travel – Did – over – Egypt – all?

....

3 didn't – by – They – here – come – airplane.

....

4 lots of – animals – of – There – posters – are.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس: 6

1 His grandma (go) .... to Aswan last year. SB

2 They (eat) .... ice cream yesterday.

3 I (don't travel) .... to London when I was young.

4 It (rains) .... heavily yesterday.

5 It's (safe) .... to go down the street in the dark alone.

6 What (do) .... you study yesterday?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 1

He traveled a lot in South america for work

....



Lesson 3





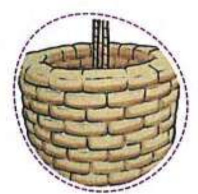


A Ancient Egyptian Homes

منازل المصريين القدماء

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main Vocabulary


mud bricks
الطوب الطينى


gate
بوابة


oven
فرن


pot
إناء (حلة)


roof
سطح


sleeping area
منطقة للنوم


reed mat
حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب

Extra vocabulary

near	بالقرب من	strong (adj.)	قوى	cooler (adj.)	أكثر برودة
flat (adj.)	مسطح/مستوٍ	furniture	أثاث	papyrus	ورق البردى
large (adj.)	كبير الحجم	outside	بالخارج	wooden boxes	صناديق خشبية
floor	طابق (دور)	bank	ضفة النهر	style	طراز

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
use	يستخدم	used	cook	يطهى	cooked
relax	يسترخى (يستريح)	relaxed	cover	يغطى	covered
store	يخزن	stored	join	يلتحق بـ	joined

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Presetnt		Past
build	يبنى	built	make	يصنع / يجعل	made
sleep	ينام	slept	keep	يحافظ على	kept
blow	يهب	blew	fall	يسقط	fell

Expressions and Phrases

close together	قريبون من بعضهم	just like	تمامًا مثل
all right	على ما يرام	never to fall	غير قابل للسقوط أبدًا



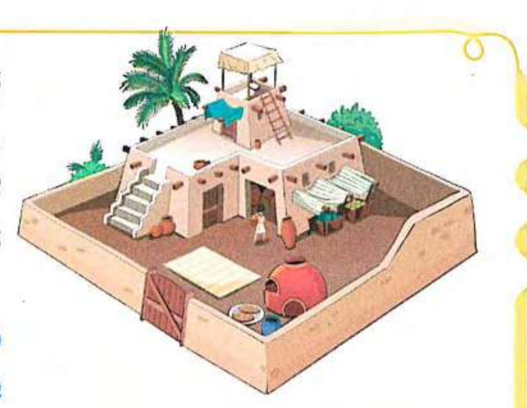
Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (tu) فى كلمة (furniture) ينطقان (tʃ) (تش).



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls.

فى مصر القديمة، بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل. فكانوا يستخدمون مياهًا للشرب والطبخ والغسيل. كما استخدموا أيضًا الطين من النهر لصنع الطوب لبناء منازلهم. الطوب الطينى يصنع حوائط قوية للغاية.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم. ساعد الطوب الطينى فى فعل هذا. قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة. كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة تحتوى على أسطح مستوية، والتى كانت أكثر جزء بارد فى المنزل. غالبًا ما كانت تطبخ العائلات، ويتناولون الطعام، ويسترخون، وينامون هناك فى الليالى الحارة.

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

كان الأثاث فى المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلفًا تمامًا عن اليوم. كانت هناك حصائر مصنوعة من القصب للجلوس والنوم عليها. استخدموا أوراق البردى لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب. كان هذا يبقى الحشرات فى الخارج. فى كل بيت كانت هناك أوان وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس. لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرَّة أو كراسى.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space. So they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

فى المدن، كان الناس يعيشون قريبين جدًّا من بعضهم، ولذلك قاموا ببناء منازلهم أطول، مكونة من طابقين. هذا يوفر مساحة. ولذلك تمكنوا من بناء منازل أكثر. انضمت منازل المدينة معًا، تمامًا كما هو الحال اليوم. فى الريف، عادة ما تحتوى المنازل على طابق واحد فقط، كما تحتوى أيضًا على حديقة. كانوا يزرعون الخضار ويربون الدجاج بها.

Check point

1 How did Ancient Egyptians keep their houses cool?

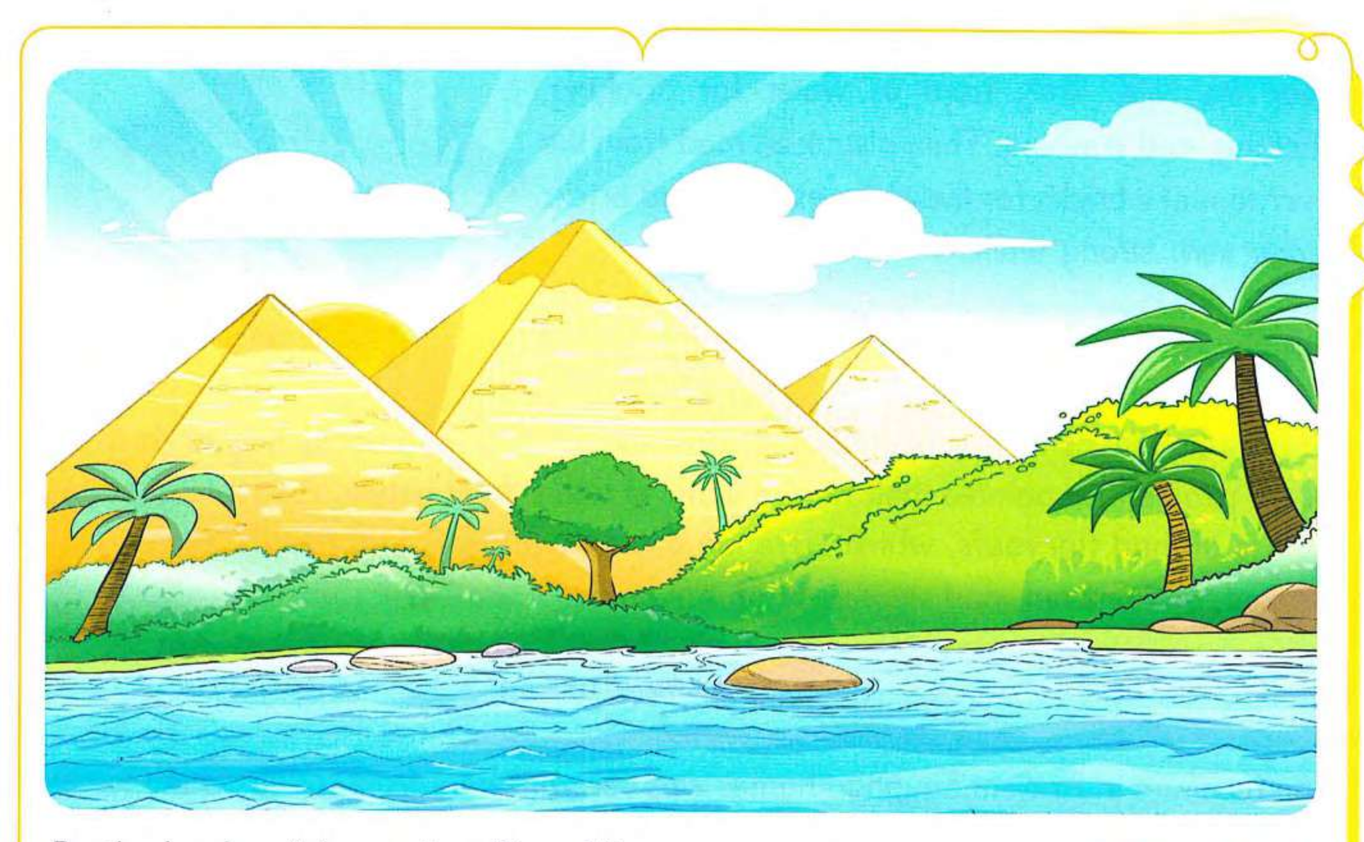
....

2 How was the furniture in Ancient Egypt?

....

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



By the banks of the ancient River Nile,
Egyptian houses had a special style:
Dark inside with small windows,
Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,
Outside under the stars at night,
One family together, feeling all right.
Mud from the Nile made their walls
Safe and strong, and never to fall.

على ضفاف نهر النيل القديم،
كان للبيوت المصرية أسلوب خاص:
الظلام من الداخل مع النوافذ الصغيرة،
حصائر القصب على السطح حيث تهب الرياح الباردة،
فى الخارج تحت النجوم ليلاً،
عائلة واحدة معًا، يشعرون أنهم على ما يرام.
جعل الطين من النيل جدرانهم
آمنة وقوية ولا تسقط أبدًا.



Rhyme is used at the end of lines of poetry. Each two lines rhyme together. They end with the same sound.

القافية: تستخدم فى نهاية سطور الشعر. كل سطرين بينهما قافية، ينتهيان بنفس الصوت.



1. Double "e" /i:/ and double "o" /u:/



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

In English, there are words with double vowels, like "pool" and "sheep".

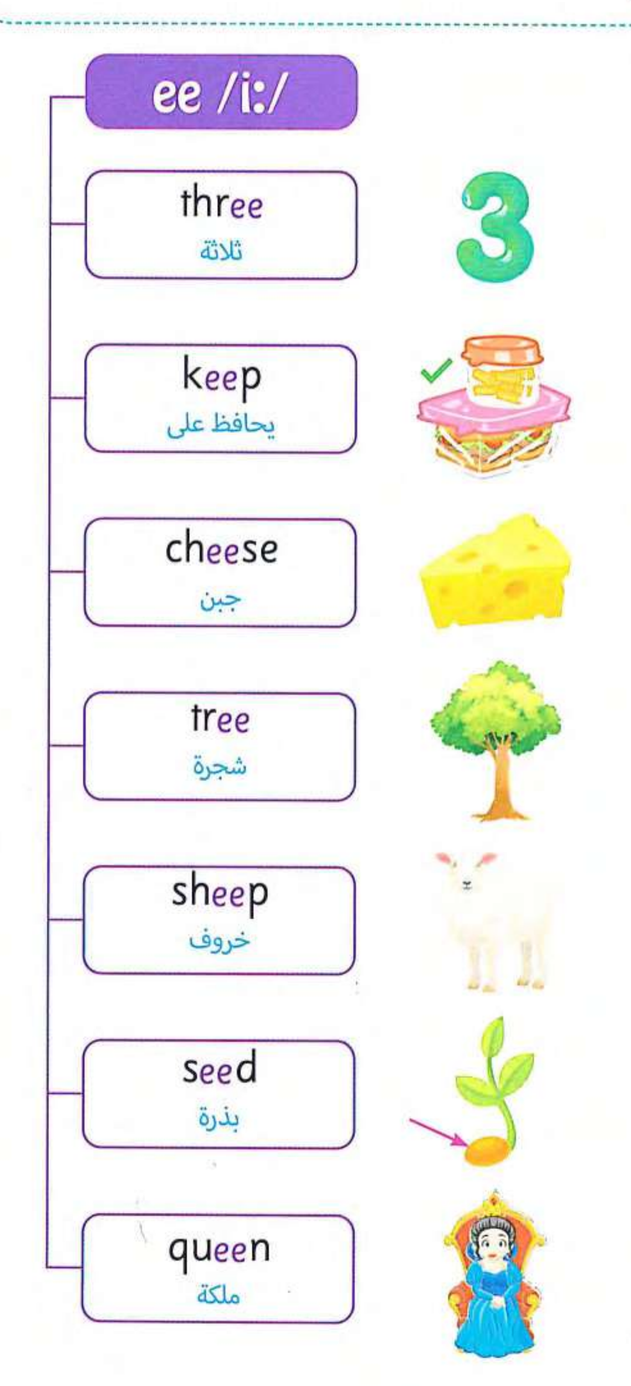
توجد فى اللغة الإنجليزية كلمات ذات أحرف متحركة مزدوجة، مثل pool وsheep.

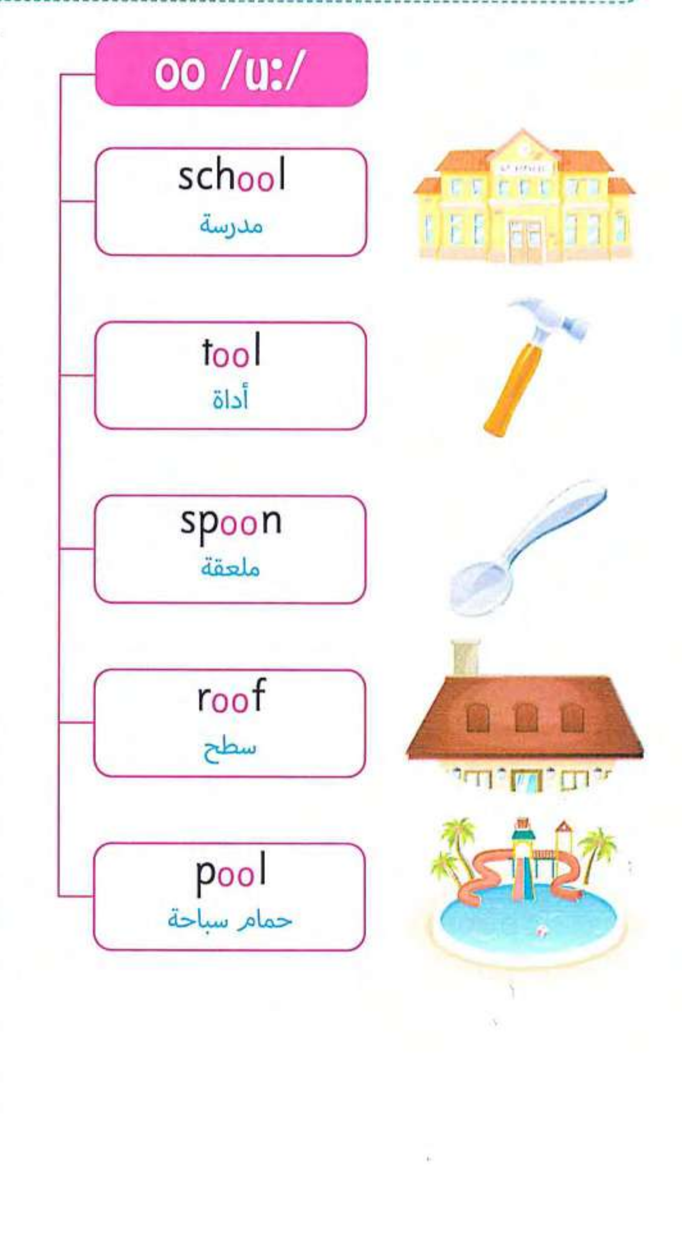
A) When there is a double 'e' in a word, the sound is long.

عندما يكون هناك حرف "e" مزدوجًا فى الكلمة، يكون الصوت طويلًا.

B) When there is a double 'o' in a word, the sound is long.

عندما يكون هناك حرف "o" مزدوجًا فى الكلمة، يكون الصوت طويلًا.





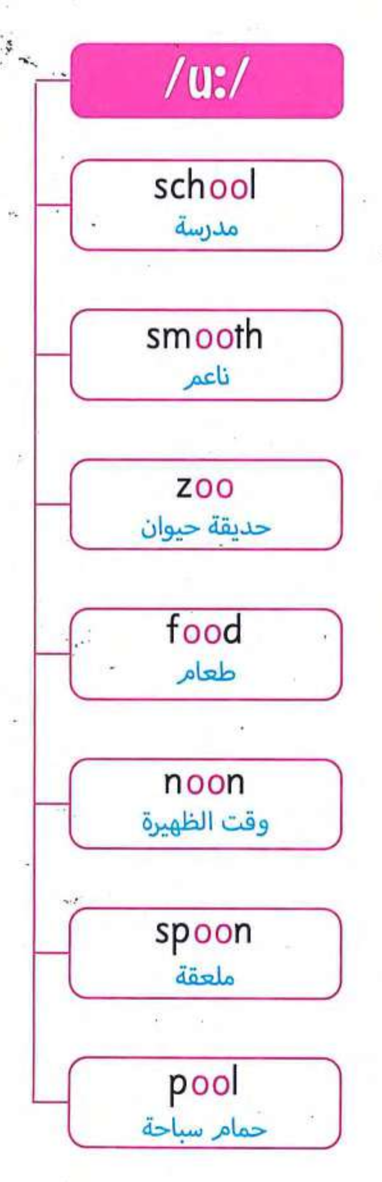
2. Saying "oo" in words نطق "oo" فى الكلمات

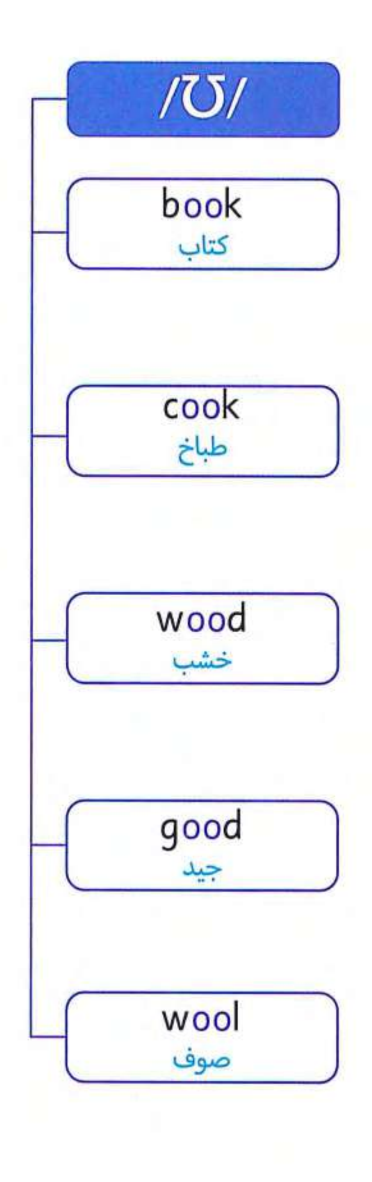


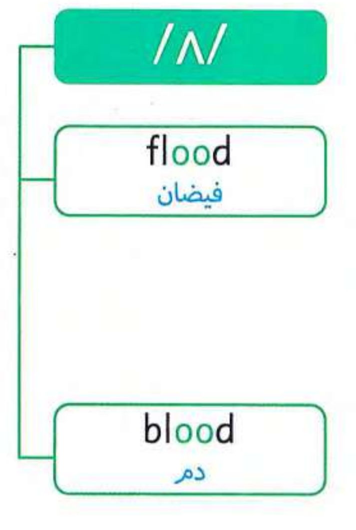
Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

When you see 'oo' in a word, you can say /u:/, as in "pool" and "spoon". We can also pronounce 'oo' as a shorter sound /ʊ/, as in words like "good", or as /ʌ/, as in a word like "blood".

عندما ترى "oo" فى كلمة، يمكنك قول /u:/، كما فى pool and spoon. يمكننا أيضًا نطق "oo" كصوت أقصر /ʊ/، كما فى كلمات مثل good أو /ʌ/، كما فى كلمة blood.









• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: 6

1. Salma is doing research about Ancient Egyptian ....
   (a. homes – b. mats c. roofs – d. schools)
2. Ancient Egyptians made their homes .... the Nile.
   (a. far – b. near – c. behind – d. next)
3. They used .... from the Nile to make bricks.
   (a. water – b. fish – c. mud – d. ships)
4. Mud bricks made very .... walls.
   (a. weak – b. tall – c. short – d. strong)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. Ancient Egyptian homes had a special ....
   a) light b) style c) night d) wind
2. Some people painted their homes .... to make them cooler.
   a) pink b) yellow c) black d) white
3. In Ancient Egyptian homes, there were .... to sit and sleep on.
   a) wooden chairs b) reed mats c) papyrus d) couches
4. The mud bricks helped to keep the homes ....
   a) dark b) cool c) hot d) big

3 Read the text and answer the questions:
اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. Ancient Egyptian houses had a special style. The houses were made of mud bricks. The walls were very strong. Ancient Egyptians painted their houses white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to cover the windows and doors to keep the insects outside.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) Ancient Egyptian Homes b) mud bricks
   c) flat roofs d) papyrus

2 In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the ....

a) Nile b) desert c) schools d) temples

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why did Ancient Egyptians paint their houses white?

....

4 What did Ancient Egyptians use papyrus for?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا: 4

1 near – their – the – homes – Nile – They – made.

....

2 cities, – people – together – In – lived – close.

....

3 houses – a special – Egyptian – style – Ancient – had.

....

4 did – people – build – What – use – to – their homes?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 1

where did people build their homes in ancient Egypt?

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 30 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

"Ancient Egyptian Homes"

mud bricks – painted white – reed mats

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project





Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

blog	مدونة	farmhouse	بيت ريفى
landscape	منظر طبيعى	ecological (adj.)	بيئى

Extra vocabulary

blog home	صفحة المدونة الرئيسية	links	روابط
archive	سجل	unusual (adj.)	غير عادى
topic	موضوع	interesting (adj.)	مثير / شيق
architect	مهندس معمارى	brilliant (adj.)	رائع
awesome (adj.)	مذهل	the Netherlands	هولندا
online	عبر الإنترنت	upside down	رأسًا على عقب
actually	بالفعل	modern (adj.)	حديث
light	ضوء	local (adj.)	محلى
fields	حقول	air	هواء

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
change	يغير	changed	heat	يسخن	heated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
find	يجد	found	get	يحصل على	got

Expressions and Phrases

works very well	تعمل جيدًا	at the top	فى القمة
fits in very well ...	يتناسب جيدًا مع...	make energy	يصنع الطاقة
ecologically friendly	صديقة للبيئة	That's so cool!	هذا رائع جدًّا!

Definitions

blogging	التدوين	to write about something in an online blog أن تكتب عن شىء ما فى مدونة عبر الإنترنت
ecological	بيئى	related to living things and their environments تتعلق بالكائنات الحية وبيئاتها

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Dalida

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE



Wednesday, 8th November

Unusual homes منازل غير عادية

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. It's really awesome!

أهلاً! اسمى داليدا وأنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة.
أكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غير عادية. هذا الموضوع ممتع للغاية بالنسبة لي لأن أمي مهندسة معمارية،
لذلك تأخذنى أحيانًا لرؤية بعض الأماكن الرائعة. إنه رائع حقًّا!



Upside down house in the Netherlands

I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

لقد وجدت هذا المنزل غير العادى فى هولندا عبر الإنترنت _ وكانت قمته للأسفل! إنه فى الواقع منزل ريفى قديم يغيره الناس لجعله حديثًا.
يعمل المنزل بشكل جيد للغاية لأن جميع النوافذ فى الأعلى، وبالتالي تحصل على الكثير من الضوء. يحبه السكان المحليون لأنه يتلاءم جيدًا
مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية، وهى المزارع والحقول. كما أنه صديق للبيئة لأنه يستخدم الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل.
ذاك لطيف جدًّا!
ما رأيك فى ذلك؟ هل يعجبك ذلك؟

Important sentences جمل هامة

- There is an unusual home in the Netherlands. - هناك بيت غير عادى فى هولندا.
- It's upside down. - إنه مقلوب رأسًا على عقب.
- All the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. - كل المنافذ فى هذا المنزل فى الأعلى ، لذلك يمكنك الحصول على الكثير من الإضاءة.
- It fits in very well with the local landscape. - إنه يتلاءم جيدًا مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية.



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Steps of writing a blog خطوات كتابة المدونة

A Write about something you like and enjoy.

اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به.

B Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like 'awesome' and 'cool'.

اكتب لقرائك كما لو أنك تتحدث إليهم. استخدم الاختصارات مثل «it's / I'm» وكلمات مثل «رائع ولطيف».

C Use exclamation points (!) and emojis: 🙂😟😕😲

استخدم علامات التعجب (!) الرموز التعبيرية.

D Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.

أبدِ رأيك ودعْ قراءك يبدون آراءهم.

E Check that your spelling is correct.

تأكد من أن هجاءك صحيح.



Using adjectives in a blog makes it interesting.

استخدام الصفات فى المدونة يجعلها ممتعة أكثر.

Positive adjectives	صفات إيجابية	Negative adjectives	صفات سلبية
funny	مضحك	awful	قبيح
awesome	مدهش	annoying	مزعج
brilliant	ذكي	boring	ممل
cool	رائع		
friendly	ودود		
interesting	ممتع		

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: 6

1 The upside-down is in ....

(a. Egypt – b. America – c. the Netherlands – d. London)

2 It's an old .... which people are changing to modern.

(a. school – b. farmhouse – c. museum – d. park)

3 All the windows are at the ....

(a. top – b. bottom – c. right – d. left)

4 You can get a lot of .... because all the windows are at the top.

(a. water – b. energy – c. heat – d. light)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 5

1 "......................................" means to write about something in an online blog.

a) Ecological b) Blogging c) Unusual d) Farmhouse

2 I found a/an .... house in the Netherlands - it's upside down!

a) big b) small c) unusual d) hot

3 This week I'm .... about unusual homes.

a) traveling b) writing c) sleeping d) finding

4 My mom is a/an .... She is designing buildings.

a) doctor b) vet c) firefighter d) architect

5 My aunt lives in a/an .... where she raises animals and grows crops.

a) apartment b) farmhouse c) tent d) boat

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

There is an unusual house in the Netherlands – it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse, which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The upside down house is in ....

a) America b) England c) Egypt d) the Netherlands

2 Upside down houses get lots of ....

a) water b) light c) land d) electricity

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why do people like the upside down house?

....

4 What makes this house ecological?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا: 4

1 mom – architect – My – an – is.

....

2 is – that – Where – house – ecological?

....

3 blogging – I – different – things – about – like.

....

4 is – upside down – the Netherlands – in – The – house.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 1

this topic is very interesting for me

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 30 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

"Unusual home"

Where is it? – Why is it unusual? – Why do people like it?

....

....

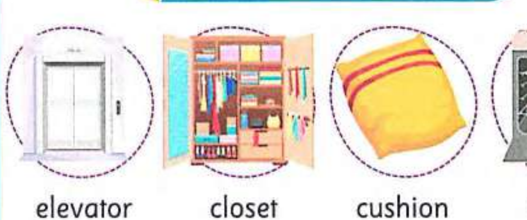
....

....

Unit 7 REVIEW



Vocabulary



elevator | closet | cushion | oven



balcony



armchair



television



shower



bed



bedroom



living room

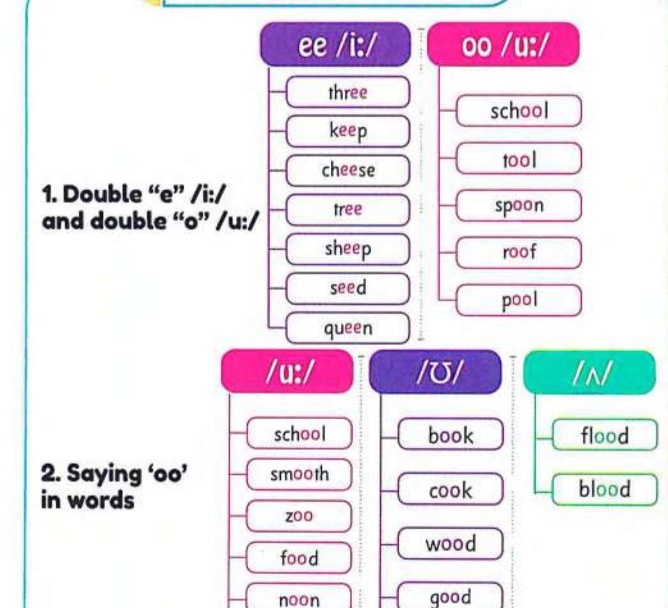


kitchen



bathroom

Pronunciation



Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative sentence:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

Regular verbs:



I visited my grandma yesterday.



Irregular verbs:

e.g.



I ate fish last week.

Negative sentence:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... .



I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question.



Yes/No question:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ...?

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.

e.g.

A: Did you travel all over Egypt?
B: Yes, I did.



Wh- question:

A: Question word	did	subject	(inf.) مصدر الفعل ...?
B: Subject (الفاعل)		التصريف الثانى للفعل..... .	

e.g.

A: When did it rain?
B: It rained yesterday.







Lesson 1

مصعد	....	خزانة	....
وسادة	....	فرن	....
بلكونة	....	كرسى ذو ذراعين	....
تلفاز	....	دش	....
سرير	....	غرفة النوم	....
غرفة المعيشة	....	مطبخ	....
حمام	....	مريح	....

Lesson 3

الطوب الطينى	....	بوابة	....
سطح	....	إناء	....
فرن	....	حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب	....
مسطح/ مستو	....	ورق البردى	....
منطقة النوم	....	ثلاثة	....
صناديق خشبية	....	يحافظ على	....
جبن	....	شجرة	....
خروف	....	بذرة	....
ملكة	....	مدرسة	....
أداة	....	ملعقة	....
صوف	....	حمام سباحة	....
طعام	....	فيضان	....



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about your new apartment:

- I moved into a new (اسم المكان) ... .
- It is (صفة للمكان) ... .
- We have/ There are (عدد الغرف) ... .
- My favorite room is (اسم الحجرة المفضلة) ... .
- There is (اسم شيء موجود بالحجرة المفضلة) ... .
- I also like (اسم حجرة أخرى مفضلة) ... .
- I (ما تقوم به فى المكان) ... .

My new apartment

I moved into a new apartment with my family. It is very big. We have three bedrooms now. There are two bathrooms and a fantastic balcony. My favorite room is the living room. There is a big television in the living room. I also like my bedroom. I relax and study in it.

How to write a description of your favorite room:

- I love (اسم الغرفة) ... .
- On the right, (محتويات الغرفة) ... .
- On the left, (محتويات الغرفة) ... .
- In the middle of the room, (الأثاث الموجود بالغرفة فى هذا المكان) ... .
- On the wall, (أسماء الأشياء المعلقة على الحائط) ... .

My bedroom

I love my bedroom. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

How to write a blog about unusual homes:

- I like blogging about (موضوع المدونة) ... .
- This week I'm writing about (اسم الموضوع).
- It's (المميز فى المنزل) ... .
- It is (تاريخ المنزل) ... .
- This works very well because (سبب إعجاب الناس بالمنزل) ... .

Unusual homes BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. I found this unusual home in the Netherlands online – it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light.

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

unfriendly – uncomfortable – unlucky – unsafe – unhappy – unfair

1. His cat died last week. He was very ....
2. I never sit in that green armchair – it's very ....
3. Don't go down the street in the dark alone – it's very ....
4. That's very .... – you ate everything and didn't leave any for us!
5. He's very .... because he missed the bus.
6. She's very .... – she never smiles or tries to make friends.

2 Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets in the past simple:

1. When we went to Sharm El-Sheikh on holiday, we .... (meet) some new friends.
2. She .... (create) a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.
3. We .... (carry) our heavy cases to the car.
4. His grandma .... (go) to Aswan last year.
5. Yesterday, my cousin .... (come) to visit us.

3 Make the sentences negative:

1. He traveled all over Egypt.

   ....

2. He ate Om Ali in Tanta.

   ....

3. It rained yesterday.

   ....

4. They came here by airplane.

   ....





Listening

1 **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:** 6
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes ....
(a. hot – b. light – c. cool – d. dark)

2 Ancient Egyptians homes all had flat ....
(a. rooms – b. halls – c. roofs – d. walls)

3 The roofs were the .... part of the house.
(a. hottest – b. coolest – c. smallest – d. biggest)

4 Families often cooked, relaxed and .... there on hot nights.
(a. studied – b. read – c. played – d. slept)

Reading

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:** **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:** 4

1 If something bad happens to you without a reason, you are ....
a) unfair b) unhappy c) unlucky d) unsafe

2 There is a bed in the middle of the ....
a) living room b) kitchen c) bedroom d) bathroom

3 The .... bricks made the Egyptian homes strong and cool.
a) made b) mud c) wall d) mat

4 It's .... to cross the road without a green light.
a) unfair b) unfriendly c) unlucky d) unsafe

3 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box:** 4
اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

papyrus – wooden – inside – mats – outside

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed ....(1).......... to sit and sleep on. They used ....(2).......... to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects ....(3).......... . In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and ....(4).......... boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

4 **Read the text and answer the questions:** **اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:** 6

Fareeda's parents had to move to a new job, so they moved to a closer apartment. Fareeda loves the new apartment because it is bigger than the old one. The new kitchen is bigger and the oven is more modern; her mom says it's easier to cook in. There is more space in the living room, so they can have a bigger television. They



have three bedrooms now. Fareeda shares a room with her sister, Amira, but their bedroom is really big. They have two bathrooms and a fantastic balcony.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about Fareeda's new ....

a) job b) apartment c) bike d) school

2 The underlined word "modern" means ....

a) old b) far c) new d) close

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why did Fareeda's parents move to a new apartment?

....

4 Summarize the text into two sentences.

....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا: 2

1 new – to – my – Welcome – apartment.

....

2 visited – was – when – five – I – her – I – house.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس: 2

1 We (carry) .... our heavy cases to the car yesterday.

2 They didn't (came) .... here by airplane.

7 Punctuate the following: **ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:** 1

what's better about this new apartment

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة من 30 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: 5

"My perfect room"

On the right, ... – In the middle of the room, ...

....

....

....

....



< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



AL-AZHAR CORNER



1 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

born – great – living – old

Rana : Do you like .... here?

Salma : I love it! It's a .... apartment!

Rana : How long did you live in your .... apartment?

Salma : Twelve years, since I was ....

2 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Did you (visit – visited – visiting) your grandma last holiday?

2 Dalia likes (drawing – reading – blogging). She always writes about something in an online blog.

3 A: When did it rain? B: It (rains – rained – rain) yesterday.

4 The bed was very (unfair – unfriendly – uncomfortable). I didn't sleep very well.

5 After school, I have a long shower in the (living room – bathroom – bedroom).

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1 to – new – Welcome – my – apartment.

....

2 is – The – fantastic – balcony.

....

3 scientist – uncle – a – My – is.

....

4 did – you – yesterday – What – do?

....

5 blogging – things – I – different – about – like.

....

Unit 8

At the doctor's

فى عيادة الطبيب

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises 

Al-Azhar 

Answers 100% 

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to: بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن الأنواع المختلفة من الأمراض والعلاجات.
- practice using "have" to talk about illnesses.
  - يتدرب على استخدام "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.
- listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.
  - يستمع ويفهم محادثة بين دكتور ومريض.
- learn about and use the prefixes "un, ir, il, and im".
  - يتعلم عن ويستخدم البادئة "un, ir, il, و im".
- understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.
  - يفهم الفرق بين الأصوات /f/ و /v/.
- write a short paragraph about staying healthy.
  - يكتب فقرة قصيرة عن البقاء بصحة جيدة.
- plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.
  - يخطط لما يجب وضعه فى حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية ويصمم ملصقًا.

Did you know?

- In Ancient Egypt, doctors often used honey as medicine to help sick people.

I can find it out!

- There are different jobs at the hospital. People can be doctors, nurses, surgeons, and *caregivers.

*caregivers مقدمو الرعاية



Lesson 1

They didn't come to the club!

لم يأتوا إلى النادى!





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



earache
ألم الأذن



toothache
ألم الأسنان



cold
إنفلونزا (برد)



cough
كحة



sore throat
التهاب الحلق



backache
ألم بالظهر



headache
صداع

Parts of the body that hurt: أجزاء من الجسم تؤلمنا:





ankle
كاحل



back
ظهر



shoulder
كتف



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ch) فى كلمة (ache) ينطقان (k).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (gh) ينطقان (f) كما فى (cough).

Vocabulary Check

ear + ache = earache

tooth + ache = toothache

Extra vocabulary

club	نادٍ	problems	مشاكل	practice	تمرين / تدريب
cousin	ابن العم أو الخال	aunt	خالة / عمة	dentist	طبيب أسنان
coach	كابتن / مدرب	honey	عسل	stomach	معدة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs — **أفعـــال منتظمــة**

Present		Past	Present		Past
stay	يبقى	stayed	hope	يتمنى	hoped

Irregular verbs — **أفعـــال غير منتظمــة**

Present		Past	Present		Past
hurt	يؤذى/ يؤلم	hurt	think	يعتقد	thought
tell	يخبر	told	feel	يشعر	felt

Expressions and Phrases

have a good day	يقضى يومًا سعيدًا	Not really	ليس تمامًا
football practice	تدريب كرة القدم	be careful	كن حذرًا
worried about	قلق بشأن	stay home	يبقى بالمنزل
feel better	يتحسن	I hope so!	أتمنى ذلك!
What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	Ouch!	هذا مؤلم!

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Fares was at the club today.
- كان فارس فى النادى اليوم.
- Some of his friends didn't come, they had problems.
- بعض أصدقائه لم يأتوا؛ كان لديهم مشاكل.
- The coach told them to stay home when they have a cough or a sore throat.
- أخبرهم المدرب أن يبقوا فى المنزل، إذا كان لديهم كحة أو التهاب فى الحلق.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 I have a/an (earache – toothache – cold – headache). I need to go to the dentist.

2 She really can't talk. She has a/an (headache – backache – sore throat – earache).

3 I need some milk and honey for my (cough – stomach – shoulder – ankle).

4 I can't walk well. My (back – stomach – shoulder – ankle) hurts.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Mom

Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?

أهلًا فارس! هل حظيت بيوم جيد فى النادى؟



Fares

Not really. Five people didn't come to the club today!

ليس تمامًا. خمسة أشخاص لم يأتوا إلى النادى اليوم!



Mom

Oh no! Are they OK?

أوه لا! هل هم بخير؟



Fares

No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.

لا، لديهم مشاكل. صديقى طارق آذى كاحله فى تدريب كرة القدم فى الليلة الماضية. وعمرو لديه ألم فى أذنه من السباحة.



Mom

What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.

ماذا عن ابنة خالتك لمى؟ قالت خالتك إنها كان لديها ألم بالأسنان.



Fares



No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!

لا، لم تكن هناك. أعتقد أنها ذهبت إلى طبيب الأسنان. كان اثنان من أصدقائى لديهم برد. أخبرنا المدرب أن نكون حذرين. عندما يكون لدينا كحة أو ألم بالحلق، يجب أن نبقى فى المنزل.

Mom

How do you feel?

كيف تشعر؟



Fares

Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.

حسنًا، لدى ألم بالظهر، وأنا وقلق على أصدقائى. أتمنى أن يتحسنوا غدًا.



Mom

I hope so, too!

أتمنى ذلك، أيضًا!

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5

1 Can I have some milk and honey for my ....?

a) stomachache b) headache c) earache d) cough

2 Adel has a/an .... His ears hurt.

a) headache b) earache c) toothache d) sore throat

3 The coach told us to be .... not to get ill.

a) good b) worried c) careful d) sick

4 I have a backache. My .... hurts.

a) ear b) stomach c) back d) arm

5 My .... hurts when I carry heavy bags.

a) ankle b) tooth c) stomach d) shoulder

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

ankle – ill – hurt – dentist – hurts

My name is Ahmed. Yesterday, I didn't go to school. I felt very ....(1)............ . I told my mom, and she thought I hurt my ....(2)............ at the football practice, but I didn't. Then she thought I had a headache, but I didn't. My teeth ....(3)............ . So, we went to the ....(4)............ . I feel fine now.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Fares is sad. He didn't have a good day at the club. Five people didn't come to the club today because they had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. Amr has an earache from swimming. Lama has a toothache. She went to the dentist. Two of his friends have a cold. The coach told them to be careful. When they have a cough or a sore throat, they should stay home! Fares is ill, too. He has a backache, and he's worried about his friends.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... has an earache from swimming.

a) Fares b) Lama c) Amr d) Tarek

2 The underlined word "dentist" means a doctor who takes care of our ....

a) bones b) lungs c) stomach d) teeth

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why is Fares sad? ....

4 What should they do when they have a cough or a sore throat?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 4

1 have – a – headache – Do – you?

....

2 of – friends – my – have – a cold – Two.

....

3 I – milk – some – Can – honey – and – have?

....

4 I – a – toothache – don't – No, – have.

....

5 Punctuate the following: 2

1 what is the matter

....

2 five people didn t come to the club today.

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"My friend is ill."

has a sore throat – milk and honey – stay home

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2





A HOW ARE YOU? كيف حالك؟



Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

What's the matter with Ashraf? ما الأمر مع أشرف؟



Ashraf: Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.
أهلًا، يا دكتور . أنا لا أشعر أننى بحالة جيدة .





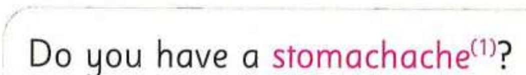


Doctor: What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?
ماذا بك، يا أشرف؟ هل لديك صداع؟

Ashraf: No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.
لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدى صداع.

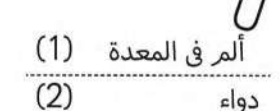


Doctor: Do you have a stomachache[1]?
هل لديك ألم فى المعدة؟





Ashraf: No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.
لا، يا دكتور، ليس لدى ألم فى المعدة.



(1) ألم في المعدة
(2) دواء



Doctor: Do you have a toothache?
هل لديك ألم فى الأسنان؟



Ashraf: No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!
لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدى ألم فى الأسنان. أنا عندى.. أنا عندى... (صوت العطس) .





Doctor: Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine[2].
أوه، عزيزى! لديك نزلة برد. ابقَ فى المنزل، ونم جيدًا وتناول هذا الدواء.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

What part of her body has Nahla hurt?

فى أى جزء من جسدها أصيبت نهلة؟

(1)	ملعب
(2)	جرح
(3)	ضمادة



Nurse: Come in, Nahla. What's the matter?

تفضلى يا نهلة. ما الأمر؟



Nahla: I fell over in the playground [1].

لقد وقعت فى الملعب.



Nurse: Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?

أووه، عزيزتى. ماذا يؤلمك؟



Nahla: Here. I have a cut [2] on my arm.

هنا. لدى جرح فى ذراعى.



Nurse: Oh, yes, I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage [3] on it.

أوه، نعم، فهمت. لا تقلقى. سأنظفه وأضع ضمادة عليه.





Nahla: Thank you, nurse.

شكرًا لك، أيتها الممرضة.





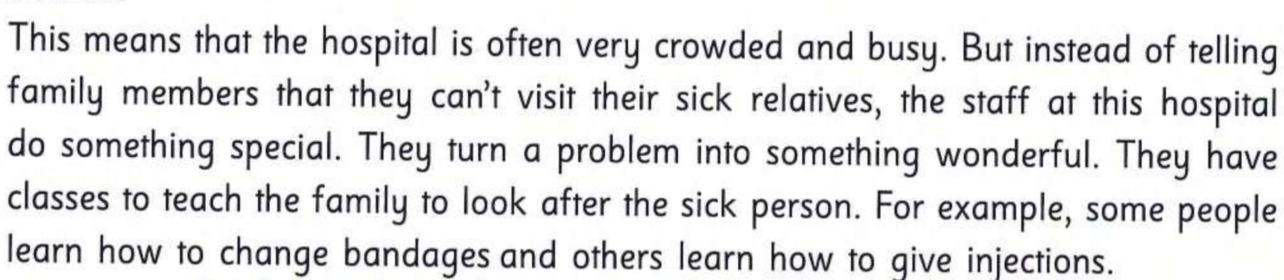
Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A Special Hospital

مستشفى مميزة

In a hospital in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country.
With every patient, there are about ten family members.
In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative.



This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

فى مستشفى فى بنغالور، مدينة فى جنوب الهند، هنالك الكثير من المرضى. يعالج المستشفى المرضى من جميع أنحاء البلاد.
مع كل مريض هناك حوالى عشرة أفراد من العائلة. فى الهند ليس من العادى أن يذهب شخص إلى المستشفى بمفرده. عادة ما تذهب العائلة مع قريبهم المريض.
هذا يعنى أن المستشفى غالبًا ما يكون مزدحمًا ومشغولًا للغاية. ولكن بدلًا من إخبار أفراد الأسرة بأنهم لا يستطيعون زيارة أقاربهم المرضى، فريق العاملين بالمستشفى يفعلون شيئًا مميزًا. إنهم يحولون المشكلة إلى شىء رائع. لديهم فصول لتعليم العائلة كيفية رعاية الشخص المريض. على سبيل المثال، يتعلم بعض الأشخاص كيفية تغيير الضمادات ويتعلم آخرون كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

Each afternoon, staff from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms.
The nurses become teachers and the family members – and sometimes even the patients – become the students. Not only does this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return to the hospital now.

بعد ظهر كل يوم، يقوم موظفو المستشفى بتحويل الممرات إلى فصول دراسية. تصبح الممرضات معلمات، وأفراد العائلة - وأحيانًا حتى المرضى - يصبحون طلابًا. هذا لا يساعد فقط العاملين بالمستشفى، ولكنه أيضًا يساعد العائلات على رعاية أقاربهم عندما يعودون إلى البيت. يعرف الموظفون أن الدروس تعمل بشكل جيد لأنه ليس كثيرًا من المرضى يعودون إلى المستشفى الآن.

Extra vocabulary

patients	مرضى	family members	أفراد العائلة	alone	بمفرده
unwell (adj.)	مريض	relatives	أقارب	crowded (adj.)	مزدحم
busy (adj.)	مشغول	staff	طاقم العمل	look after	يعتنى بـ
bandages	ضمادات	injections	حقن	corridors	ممرات



We use "have" to talk about illness:

نستخدم الفعل «have» للتحدث عن المرض:

Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة

I/ You/ We/ They/ اسم جمع + have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).



I have a headache.

أنا عندى (مصاب بـ) صداع.

He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + has + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).



Hana has a cold.

هنا لديها (مصابة بـ) دور برد.

Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية

I/ You/ We/ They / اسم جمع	don't	have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).
He/ She/ It / اسم مفرد	doesn't	



I don't have a sore throat. I have a backache.

أنا ليس لدى (مصابة بـ) التهاب فى الحلق. أنا لدى (مصابة بـ) ألم فى الظهر.



She doesn't have an earache. She has a toothache.

هى ليس لديها (مصابة بـ) ألم فى الأذن. هى لديها (مصابة بـ) ألم فى الأسنان.

Yes/ No Question:

A: Do / Does + subject (الفاعل) + have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض)?

B: Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do/ does.
B: No,		don't/ doesn't.



A: Do you have an earache?
B: Yes, I do.



A: Does she have a toothache?
B: No, she doesn't.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 Ola (is – has – have – did) a toothache.

2 (Is – Are – Do – Does) you have an earache?

3 Adel (don't – doesn't – hasn't – isn't) have a cold.

4 Does she (has – have – had – having) a stomachache?

5 Mona and Laila (have – has – having – to have) a sore throat.

6 (Do – Does – Are – Doing) your mom have an earache?

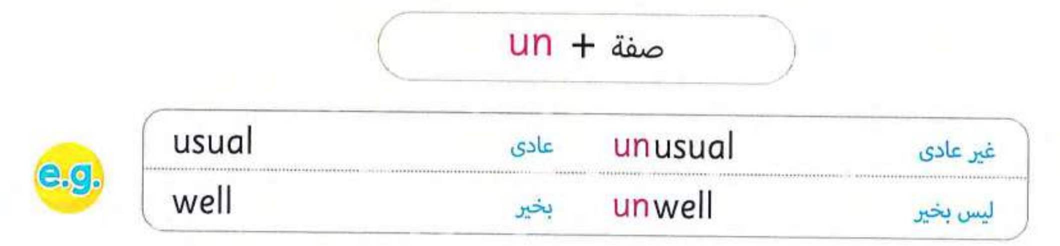
7 The children (have – has – having – to have) a cold.

8 We (aren't – don't – doesn't – weren't) have a headache.

Prefix un-

We can add the prefix un- to make the opposite of an adjective.

نضيف البادئة (-un) لتكون المضاد من الصفة.



un + صفة

e.g.

usual	عادى	unusual	غير عادى
well	بخير	unwell	ليس بخير

- We add ir-, il-, and im- to some adjectives.

- نضيف -im-, il-, ir لبعض الصفات:

Prefix	Use	Root word	Opposite word
ir	when the word begins with r	responsible مسئول	irresponsible غير مسئول
il	when the word begins with l	legal قانونى	illegal غير قانونى
im	when the word begins with m or p	possible محتمل / ممكن	impossible غير محتمل / غير ممكن
		moral أخلاقى	immoral غير أخلاقى

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 Talking on your cell phone while driving is (legal – unwell – illegal – polite).

2 I won the game. I feel (unhappy – unwell – happy – immoral).

3 It's (possible – responsible – irresponsible – impossible) to climb that mountain. It's very dangerous.

4 In India, it's (unusual – moral – well – usual) for a sick person to go to the hospital alone.

5 He's (polite – impolite – immoral – irresponsible). He always speaks carefully and shows respect.

6 She always forgets to feed her cat. She's (illegal – impossible – irresponsible – immoral).

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

1 Nahla fell over in the ....

(a. class – b. bedroom – c. playground – d. street)

2 Nahla had a cut on her ....

(a. ankle – b. arm – c. hand – d. feet)

3 The nurse put a .... on the cut.

(a. sunscreen – b. bandage – c. medicine – d. injection)

4 Nahla .... the nurse.

(a. fed – b. helped – c. thanked – d. hurt)

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

injections – sick – crowded – relatives – quiet

There is a city in southern India, called Bangalore. It's a very busy and ....(1)............ hospital. When a man is ....(2)............, his whole family goes with him. So, the hospital decided to teach the patients' ....(3)............ how to look after a sick person. The doctors and nurses taught the patients' relatives how to give ....(4)............ and change bandages.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 4

1 have – Do – a – Adel – stomachache, – you?

....

2 fell – the – I – in – playground – over.

....

3 is – hospital – very – crowded – busy – The – and.

....

4 medicine – this – home – and – take – Stay.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

10

1 The kids (has) .... a toothache.
2 (Does) .... you have a stomachache?
3 Does Hany (has) .... a headache?
4 He (don't) .... have a cold.
5 A: (Is) .... he have a toothache? B: Yes, he does.
6 We (aren't) .... have a backache.
7 They (having) .... a cold.
8 Ola doesn't (has) .... a cut on her arm.
9 Talking on your cell phone while driving is (legal) ....
10 It's (possible) .... to jump that high, it's very dangerous.

5 Punctuate the following:

2

1 do you have a headache

....

2 i don t have a toothache.

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"You fell over in the playground."

have a cut – put a bandage – my legs hurt

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3







A The Power of Honey قوة العسل

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

honey	عسل	way	طريقة	perhaps	ربما / يمكن
injuries	إصابات	illnesses	أمراض	recently	حديثًا (مؤخرًا)
cupboard	دولاب (خزانة)	substance	مادة	medical care	رعاية طبية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	treat	يعالج	treated
heal	يشفى	healed	contain	يحتوى على	contained
mix	يخلط	mixed	damage	يدمر	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew	cut	يقطع / يجرح	cut

Expressions and Phrases

used as ...	يستخدم كـ ...	for thousands of years	لآلاف السنين
make your cough better	تحسن من حالة الكحة لديك	get better	يتحسن

Definitions

treatment	علاج	medical care to help you get better	الرعاية الطبية لمساعدتك على التحسن
wound	جرح	an injury that damages your skin	إصابة تتلف جلدك
bacteria	بكتيريا	very small things that can make you ill	أشياء صغيرة جدًا تصيبك بالمرض
heal	يشفى	to get better	أن تصبح أفضل



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Health Problems مشاكل صحية	Solution الحل
sore throat التهاب الحلق	honey and lemon عسل وليمون
a cut knee جرح بالركبة	bandage ضمادة
sunburn حرق شمسى	sunscreen كريم واقٍ من الشمس
headache صداع	pills أقراص / حبوب

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Honey is used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses.

- يستخدم العسل كعلاج لبعض الجروح و الأمراض.

- It was used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago.

- تم استخدامه فى علاج الجروح من قبل الأطباء المصريين منذ حوالى ٥٠٠٠ سنة.

- Some types of honey contain things that can kill bacteria.

- بعض أنواع العسل تحتوى على أشياء يمكن أن تقتل البكتيريا.

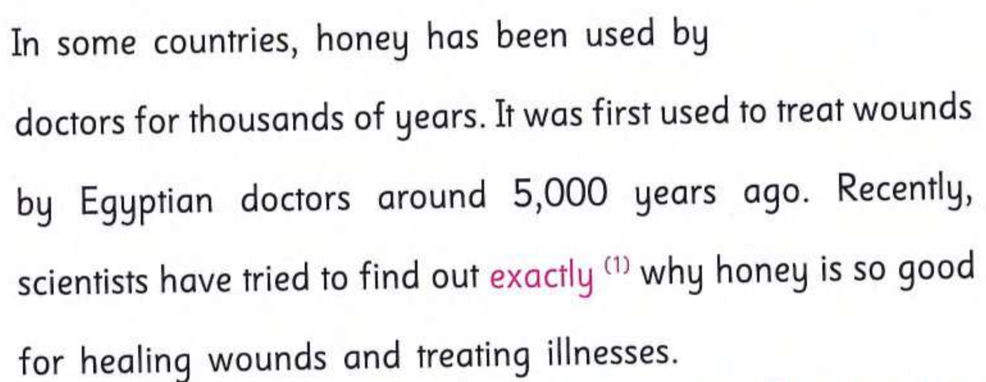


Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses.



In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly (1) why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

(1)	بالتحديد
(2)	حريص
(3)	آمن

هل تحب العسل؟ ربما تستمتع بتناوله على الإفطار. أو ربما تستمتع به فى البسبوسة الحلوة، لكن هل تعلم أن العسل ليس طعامًا فقط؟ كما أنه يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الجروح والأمراض.

فى بعض البلدان، استخدم الأطباء العسل لآلاف السنين. تم استخدامه لأول مرة لعلاج الجروح من قِبل الأطباء المصريين منذ حوالى ٥٠٠٠ سنة. مؤخرًا، حاول العلماء معرفة بالتحديد لماذا العسل جيد جدًا فى شفاء الجروح وعلاج الأمراض.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful (2), however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe (3) to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

يعلم العلماء أن بعض أنواع العسل تحتوى على الأشياء التى يمكن أن تساعد فى قتل البكتيريا. وهذا يساعد على شفاء الجروح بشكل أسرع. يجب أن تكون حذرًا، برغم ذلك. العسل الذى يستخدمه الأطباء هو عسل خاص آمن للاستخدام كعلاج. لذا، إذا كان لديك وعاء من العسل فى خزانتك، يمكنك مزجه مع الحليب لجعل كحتك / سعالك أفضل، لكن لا تضعه على جرح بالركبة!



Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

/f/

frog ضفدع	scarf وشاح / كوفية	fruit فاكهة
ferry معدية	few قليل	safe آمن
life حياة	fan مروحة	leaf ورقة شجر
friends أصدقاء	fast سريع	fine جيد

/v/

vet
طبيب بيطرى

vegetables
خضراوات

television
تلفاز

van
شاحنة صغيرة

leave
يغادر

live
حى / يعيش

very
جدًّا

view
منظر

save
يوفر

lovely
جميل

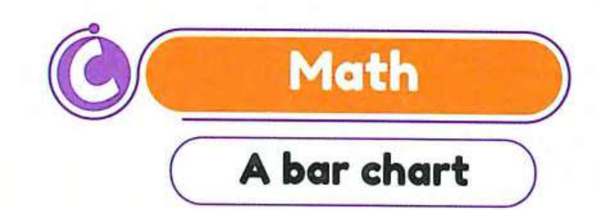


To make the /f/ sound, rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but don't use your voice.

لعمل الصوت /f/ أرح الأسنان العلوية على الشفاه السفلية ثم انفخ، ولكن لا تستخدم صوتك!

To make the /v/ sound, rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but do use your voice!

لعمل الصوت /v/ أرح الأسنان العلوية على الشفاه السفلية ثم انفخ، ولكن استخدم صوتك!



A bar chart



Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ، ولاحظ:

A bar chart is a way of showing information.

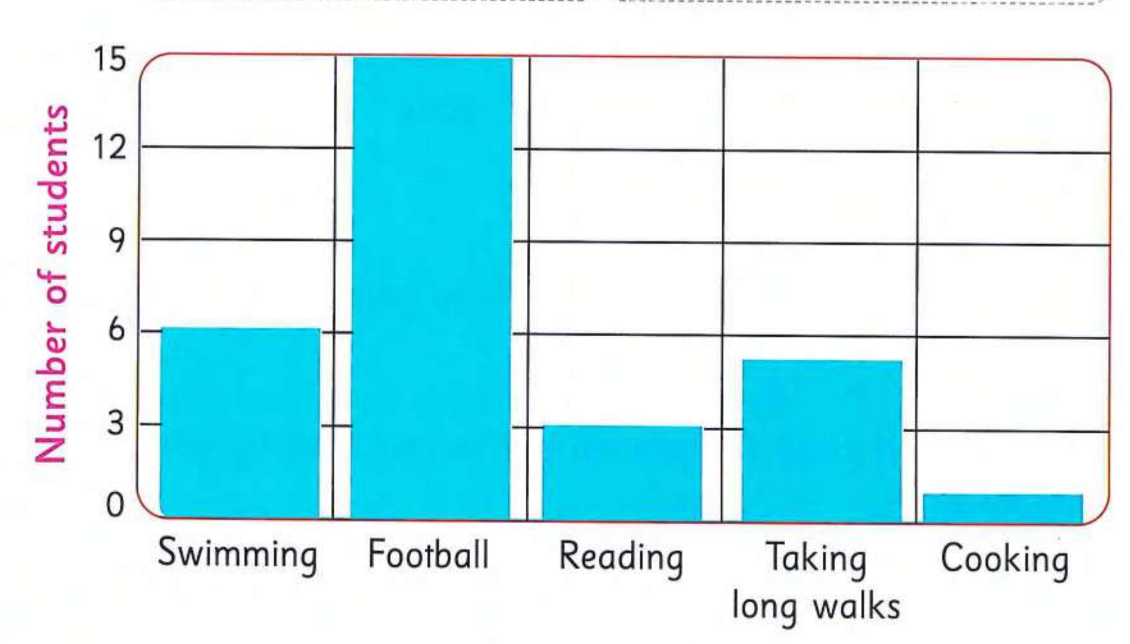
الرسم البيانى هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات.

e.g. Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free-time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

فى الأسبوع الماضى، سُئل ٣٠ طالبًا عن نشاط وقت الفراغ المفضل لديهم للبقاء بصحة جيدة. هنا نتيجة استطلاع الرأى الخاص بهم.

ما هو النشاط المفضل الذى استمتع به أكبر عدد من الطلاب؟

Favorite activity	Number of students
Swimming السباحة	6 students
Football كرة القدم	15 students
Reading القراءة	3 students
Taking long walks المشى لمسافات طويلة	5 students
Cooking الطبخ	1 student







• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5

1 "............................" means the very small things that can make you ill.
a) Wound b) Treatment c) Heal d) Bacteria

2 You can mix honey with .... to make your cough better.
a) water b) juice c) cola d) milk

3 "............................" means an injury that damages your skin.
a) Honey b) Treatment c) Heal d) Wound

4 I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a .... on it.
a) bandage b) pill c) sunscreen d) lemon

5 "............................" means the medical care to help you get better.
a) Treatment b) Heal c) Bacteria d) Wound

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

school – treatment – hospital – special – honey

My name is Eman. I'm a doctor. I work in a ....(1).................. . My favorite food is ....(2)............ . I like honey because it's not only a food, but it's also a ....(3)......... for some injuries and illnesses. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. I use honey too, but it's a ....(4)............ honey. Only doctors use it.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

I'm Asmaa. I'm a nurse. Yesterday, I had a visit to the school in my town. I taught the students a lot about honey and how to use it to treat illnesses. I also taught them some solutions to help anyone who has a problem. If a person has a sore throat, make them some honey and lemon. If a person has a cut knee, put a bandage on the cut. If someone has a sunburn, they should use sunscreen. If someone has a headache, they should take some pills.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Asmaa is a ....
a) doctor b) firefighter c) nurse d) teacher

2 She taught the students a lot about ....
a) milk b) lemon c) honey d) pills

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did Asmaa teach the students yesterday?

....

4 What do you do if someone has a sore throat?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

4

1 cut – honey – your – Don't – on – knee – put.

....

2 a very – have – scarf – long – I.

....

3 good – for – Honey – wounds – healing – is.

....

4 a bandage – your – cut – knee – Put – on.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

2

1 honey isn t only a food.

....

2 egyptian doctors used honey around 5,000 years ago

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"The power of honey"

treat wounds – kill bacteria – very useful

....

....

....

....

....

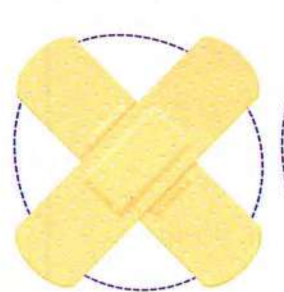




Main vocabulary



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:


bandages
ضمادات



sunscreen
كريم واقٍ من الشمس

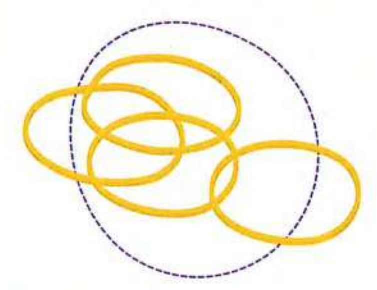

scissors
مقص



insect bite cream
كريم لدغة الحشرات


cleansing wipes
مناديل للتطهير


medical gloves
قفازات طبية


rubber bands
أربطة مطاطية


safety pins
دبابيس الأمان



soap
صابون

Extra vocabulary

presentation	عرض تقديمي	way	طريقة	expert	خبير
exercise	تمرين	early	مبكرًا	great (adj.)	رائع

Expressions and Phrases

staying healthy	البقاء بصحة جيدة	balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
look after	يعتني بـ	keep your body moving	حافظ على حركة جسمك
enough sleep	قدر كافٍ من النوم	In addition, ...	بالإضافة إلى ذلك، ...
spend time	يقضي وقتًا	keep healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
make time	يدبر وقتًا	focus on	يركز على



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

العرض التقديمى الخاص بى اليوم يتعلق بالبقاء بصحة جيدة. من المهم حقًّا تناول الأطعمة الصحية مثل الفاكهة والخضراوات واتباع نظام غذائى متوازن. وهناك العديد من الأشياء الأخرى التى يمكننا القيام بها للعناية بصحتنا.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

يجب عليك القيام ببعض التمارين كل يوم. من المهم جدًّا أن تحافظ على تحرك جسمك. لعب الرياضة فى المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء هو طريقة جيدة للتمرين.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

شىء آخر يمكنك القيام به وهو الذهاب إلى الفراش/السرير مبكرًا. من المهم أن تحصل على ما يكفى من النوم. يعتقد الخبراء أنك يجب أن تنام ما بين ثمانى إلى تسع ساعات كل ليلة.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن أحد أفضل الطرق للبقاء بصحة جيدة هو قضاء الوقت مع أصدقائك. ليس جسمك فقط الذى تحتاج أن تبقيه بصحة جيدة. يجب أن تخصص وقتًا للتركيز على أن تكون سعيدًا أيضًا. قضاء الوقت مع العائلة والأصدقاء طريقة رائعة للقيام بذلك.

Check point

1 What is the presentation about?

....

2 How many hours of sleep should we get every night?

....

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

1 Mazen has a presentation at .... today.
(a. club – b. school – c. hospital – d. park)

2 The presentation is about staying ....
(a. clever – b. active – c. healthy – d. perfect)

3 It's really important to have a .... diet.
(a. unhealthy – b. balanced – c. fast – d. slow)

4 Getting .... sleep, and drinking water is also important.
(a. too much – b. little – c. enough – d. a lot of)

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

time – happy – body – family – money

It is really important to stay healthy. One of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend ....(1)............ with your friends. It's not only your ....(2)............ that you need to keep healthy. You should make time to focus on being ....(3)............, too. Spending time with your ....(4)............ and friends is a great way to do this.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

My name is Omar. My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a <u>balanced</u> diet. You should do some exercise every day. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night. You should make time to focus on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The main idea of the text is about ....

a) family and friends b) healthy diet
c) enough sleep d) playing sports

2 The underlined word "<u>balanced</u>" means to eat ....

a) only meat b) only vegetables
c) all types of food d) only fruit

B Answer the following questions:

3 What should you do to be happy?

....

4 Summarize how to stay healthy in two sentences.

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

4

1 have – a balanced – to – It's – important – diet.

....

2 do – we – to – What – stay – should – healthy?

....

3 bed – should – go – early – You – to.

....

4 sport – way – Playing – exercise – to – is – a good.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

2

1 it's really important to eat healthy food

....

2 you should do some exercise every day

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"How to stay healthy?"

a lot of water – exercise every day – have a balanced diet

....

....

....

....



REVIEW



Vocabulary




earache


toothache


cold

cough


sore throat


backache


headache

Parts of the body that hurt:


ankle


back


shoulder

Language Focus

We use "have" to talk about illness:

Affirmative sentence:

I/ You/ We/ They/ اسم جمع + have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).



I have a headache.

He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + has + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).



Hana has a cold.

Negative sentence:

I/ You/ We/ They / اسم جمع	don't	have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).
He/ She/ It / اسم مفرد	doesn't	



I don't have a sore throat.
I have a backache.

She doesn't have an earache.
She has a toothache.

Pronunciation

/f/

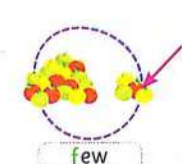



frog


scarf


fruit


ferry


few


safe


life


fan


leaf


friends


fast


fine

/v/


vet


vegetables


television




van


leave


live




very


view


save


lovely





Lesson 1

كاحل	....	ظهر	....
صداع	....	إنفلونزا/ برد	....
كتف	....	ألم الأذن	....
ألم الأسنان	....	كحة	....
ألم بالظهر	....	التهاب الحلق	....

Lesson 2

أفراد العائلة	....	بمفرده	....
مريض	....	أقارب	....
مزدحم	....	مشغول	....
طاقم العمل	....	يعتنى بـ	....
ضمادات	....	حقن	....
ممرات	....		

Lesson 3

وشاح/ كوفية	....	ورقة شجر	....
ضفدع	....	قليل	....
فاكهة	....	طبيب بيطرى	....
منظر	....	تلفاز	....
آمن	....	مروحة	....
جدًا	....	خضراوات	....
شاحنة صغيرة	....	حياة	....
معدية	....	يغادر	....
يوفر	....	حى/ يعيش	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about illnesses:

- Five people didn't come to the club today!
- My friend (اسم) has (مرض).
- My friend (اسم) hurt (جزء من أجزاء الجسم).
- I have (مرض).

Illnesses

Five people didn't come to the club today! My friend Amr has an earache from swimming. My friend Lama has a toothache. She went to the dentist. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. I have a sore throat. I can't talk.

How to write about health problems and the solutions:

- If a person has (مرض), (علاج المرض).
- If a person has (مرض), (علاج المرض).
- If a person has (مرض), (علاج المرض).
- If a person has (مرض), (علاج المرض).

Health problems and the solutions

If a person has a sore throat, make them some honey and lemon. If a person has a cut knee, put a bandage on the cut. If a person has a sunburn, they should use sunscreen. If someone has a headache, they should take some pills.

How to write about the usage of honey:

- I really like honey.
- I like to drink honey and lemon when I have (أسماء أمراض) .....
- Some doctors use honey as (استخدامات العسل) ...
- Doctors use (نوع العسل) ...
- Honey contains things that help to (فوائد العسل) ....

The usage of honey

I really like honey. I like to drink honey and lemon when I cough, or when I have a sore throat. Some doctors use honey as a treatment for wounds. Doctors use a special kind of honey. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria and heal wounds.

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Rewrite these sentences so they mean the opposite:

1 Tarek is happy.

....

2 The bridge is safe.

....

3 Ramy is fit.

....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences or questions:

1 you / an earache / Do / have / ?

....

2 sore / a / I / throat / have / .

....

3 a / has / He / cold / .

....

4 Nader / have / Does / headache / a / ?

....

5 he / No, / doesn't / .

....

3 Look at the words in bold in the article. Match them to their meaning:

1 treatment • a. to get better

2 wound • b. very small things that can make you ill

3 bacteria • c. medical care to help you get better

4 heal • d. an injury that damages your skin







1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

1 Mai feels very ....
(a. happy – b. sad – c. sick – d. well)

2 Mai .... have a stomachache.
(a. don't – b. doesn't – c. isn't – d. aren't)

3 Mai has a ....
(a. sore throat – b. headache – c. stomachache – d. earache)

4 She'll drink honey and ....
(a. juice – b. water – c. lemon – d. milk)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 I drink .... and lemon because I have a sore throat.
a) cola b) pills c) honey d) ice cream

2 ".........................." are very small things that can make you feel ill.
a) Treatment b) Wound c) Bacteria d) Heal

3 If you have a ...., put a bandage on it.
a) sore throat b) sunburn c) cut knee d) headache

4 I have a/an .... I can't hear you well.
a) toothache b) earache c) stomachache d) cold

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

don't – bacteria – mix – treatment – wounds

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill ....(1)............ .This helps ....(2)............ to heal more quickly. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can ....(3)............ it with milk to make your cough better, but ....(4)............ put it on your cut knee!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Honey is very useful. It isn't only a food; it is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that



doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The main idea of the text is about ....

a) sunscreen b) honey c) bandages d) bacteria

2 The underlined word "wounds" means ....

a) foods b) drinks c) cuts d) ankles

B Answer the following questions:

3 Who first used honey to treat wounds?

....

4 How can you make your cough better?

....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 they – Do – a – stomachache – have?

....

2 football – Tarek – practice – hurt – his – at – ankle.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 (We) .... has a stomachache.

2 She doesn't (has) .... a headache. She has an earache.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

amira has a sore throat

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Health problems and the solutions"

What do you do if a person has a cut knee?
What do you do if a person has a sunburn?

....

....

....

....





< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!







AI-AZHAR CORNER



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. My friend Amr has a/an (sore throat – stomachache – earache) from swimming.
2. I have a sore throat. I can't (see – talk – walk).
3. Lama went to the (vet – dentist – nurse).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Does she (has – have – had) a headache?
2. (Treatment – Wound – Bacteria) is/are an injury that damages your skin.
3. (Do – Is – Does) you have a cough?
4. My grandma put (sunscreen – milk – bandage) on the cut knee.
5. Bacteria are very small things that can make you (happy – ill – exciting).

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. to – enough – It's – sleep – important – get.

   ....

2. has – He – a – toothache.

   ....

3. doesn't – ankle – her – hurt – She.

   ....

4. does – Where – it – hurt?

   ....

5. a sore – Do – throat – you – have?

   ....



Unit 9 My favorite animal

حيوانى المفضل

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Al-Azhar | Answers 100% Q&A

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about animals.
- listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.
- learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.
- write an email about an unusual animal.
- research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.

- يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن الحيوانات.
- يستمع ويقرأ عن رحلة إلى حديقة الحيوانات البرية.
- يتعلم كيف يقول أصوات /w/ و /v/.
- يكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا عن حيوان غير عادى.
- يبحث ويقوم بعمل رسم بيانى عن الحيوانات فى موطن المعيشة.

Did you know?

- Flamingos eat with their heads upside down. They use their tongue to catch their food.

I can find it out!

- Egypt is home to many animals, such as camels, donkeys, horses, sheep, goats, gazelles, and desert foxes, that mainly live in the desert areas.



Lesson 1

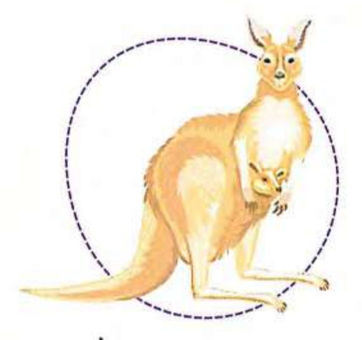
Wildlife الحياة البرية



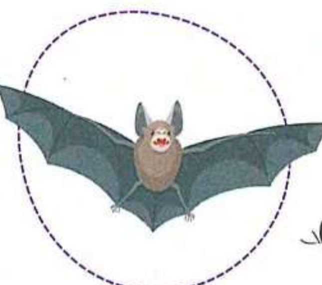


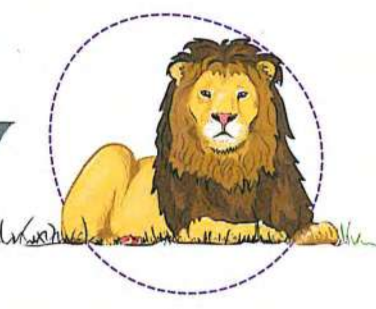
Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

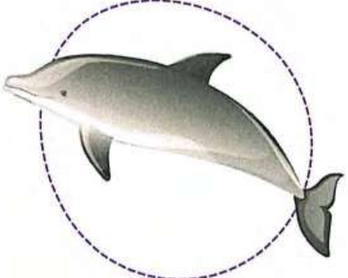

kangaroo
الكنغر


panda
باندا


bat
خفاش


lion
أسد


penguin
بطريق


dolphin
دلفين


snail
حلزون


parrot
ببغاء

Extra vocabulary

wildlife	الحياة البرية	shell	صدفة	Australia	أستراليا
rainforest	الغابة الاستوائية	Africa	إفريقيا	strong (adj.)	قوى
friendly (adj.)	ودود	ocean	محيط	China	الصين
bamboo	نبات الخيزران	wonderful (adj.)	رائع	awesome (adj.)	رائع
pouch	جراب	sweet (adj.)	لطيف	fridge	ثلاجة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعـــال منتظمـة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
stay	يبقى / يمكث	stayed	repeat	يكرر	repeated
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
can	يستطيع	could	sit	يجلس	sat
feed	يطعم	fed	hide	يختبئ	hid

Expressions and Phrases

at night	في الليل	sleep upside down	ينام رأسًا على عقب
day out	يوم بالخارج	go near	يقترب
do a project on	يقوم بعمل مشروع عن	I've got to	يجب أن



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) فى كلمة (ocean) ينطق (ʃ) (ش).

Vocabulary Check

- لاحظ أن (favorite) قد تأتى اسمًا مثل: My favorites were the parrots.
- وقد تأتى (favorite) صفة مثل: He saw his favorite birds.

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Parrots are so beautiful, and they can talk.
- البغاوات جميلة للغاية، وتستطيع التحدث.
- Penguins live in cold places, so we can feed them some fish.
- تعيش البطاريق فى أماكن باردة، ولذلك نستطيع أن نطعمها بعض الأسماك.
- Bats fly at night, and they sleep upside down on trees.
- تطير الخفافيش ليلًا ، وتنام رأسًا على عقب على الأشجار.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 A (lion – dolphin – parrot – snail) is a sea animal.

2 A (bat – parrot – kangaroo – panda) is a beautiful and colorful bird.

3 A (snail – parrot – bat – penguin) doesn't have legs.

4 (Kangaroos – Pandas – Lions – Monkeys) are the strongest animals in the jungle.



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

	kangaroo الكنغر	I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. أنا أعيش فى أستراليا. أقفز على قدمين.
	panda باندا	I live in China. I eat bamboo. I'm big, and black and white. أنا أعيش فى الصين. أنا آكل الخيزران. أنا كبير، ولونى أسود وأبيض.
	bat خفاش	I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. أطير فى الليل. أنام رأسًا على عقب على الأشجار.
	lion أسد	I live in Africa. I'm a very big cat. I'm very strong. أنا أعيش فى إفريقيا. أنا قطة كبيرة جدًّا. أنا قوى جدًّا.
	penguin بطريق	I live on ice and snow. I'm black and white. I can swim, but I can't fly. أنا أعيش على الجليد والثلج. لونى أسود وأبيض. يمكننى السباحة، لكن لا يمكننى الطيران.
	dolphin دلفين	I'm very friendly. I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. أنا ودود جدًّا. أنا أسبح فى مجموعة مع عائلتى فى المحيط.
	snail حلزون	I live in the garden. I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. أنا أعيش فى الحديقة. لدى صَدفة. ليس لدى أرجل أو أذرع.
	parrot ببغاء	I'm a bird. I am very beautiful and colorful. I live in the rainforest. أنا طائر. أنا جميل جدًّا وملون. أنا أعيش فى الغابة الاستوائية.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:

Where did Ramez go yesterday? أين ذهب رامز أمس؟



Ramez

Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.

أهلا! قضيت يومًا رائعًا فى الخارج بالأمس مع عائلتى.



Ayman

Where did you go?



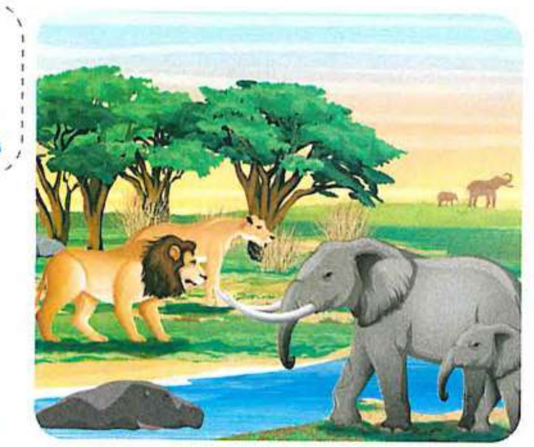
أين ذهبت؟



Ramez

I went to the new wildlife park – it was awesome!

ذهبت إلى حديقة الحيوانات البرية الجديدة - كانت رائعة!





Ayman

What did you see? Could you go near the lions?

ماذا رأيت؟ هل تمكنت من الاقتراب من الأسود؟



Ramez

No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch – it's so sweet!

لا، بقينا فى السيارة. لكن أمكننا رؤيتها من خلال الأشجار. كان الكنغر مثيرًا للاهتمام أيضًا. عندما يكونون صغارًا ، يمكنهم الجلوس داخل جراب أمهاتها - إنها لطيفة جدًّا!



Ayman

What birds did you see?



ما الطيور التى رأيتها؟



Ramez

Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!

كثيرًا، لكن المفضلة لدى كانت الببغاوات. كانت جميلة جدًّا ويمكنها التحدث! قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات لتكررها!





Ayman

What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

ماذا عن الحيوانات التى تحب البرد؟ هل رأيت أيًّا منها؟



Ramez

Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. We fed them some fish! I love penguins – they can swim so well and they look so cool!

نعم، البطاريق! كانت فى مكان خاص بالداخل. كان المكان باردًا مثل الثلاجة. أطعمناها بعض الأسماك! أنا أحب البطاريق - يمكن أن تسبح جيدًا وتبدو رائعة جدًّا!





Ayman

Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

رائع! هل كان هناك أى شىء أردت رؤيته ولكنك لم تستطع ذلك؟



Ramez

The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark!

الخفافيش. أنا أقوم بعمل مشروع عن الخفافيش فى المدرسة، لذلك أردت حقًّا رؤيتها! لكنها كانت جميعًا تختبئ ولم أستطع رؤيتها فى الظلام!





Ayman

Oh well, it sounds amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now – that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

أووه حسنًا ، يبدو الأمر رائعًا! يجب أن أطعم أرنبى الآن- هذه هى الحياة البرية التى سأراها اليوم!





Lesson 1



- Remembering - Understanding - Applying - Analyzing - Evaluating - Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5

1 .... were so beautiful and they could talk!

a) Bats b) Kangaroos c) Parrots d) Snails

2 .... eat bamboo. They're black and white.

a) Lions b) Dolphins c) Bats d) Pandas

3 ....are very big cats. They're very strong.

a) Penguins b) Lions c) Parrots d) Snails

4 When the kangaroos are .... They can sit inside their mom's pouch.

a) old b) little c) hungry d) cold

5 Snails have a/an .... on their backs.

a) feathers b) wings c) shells d) pouches

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

cold – animals – bats – pouch – strong

I went to the wildlife park yesterday with my family. We saw lots of ....(1)............... . We saw kangaroos. The little kangaroos were sitting inside their mom's ....(2)......... . We saw penguins, too. They were in a special ....(3)............ place. We also saw ....(4)............ . They were sleeping upside down on trees.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:



Ramez went to the new wildlife park yesterday. He had a wonderful day out with his family. They stayed in the car. They could see the lions through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch. Ramez's favorite birds were the parrots. They were so beautiful, and they could talk! The penguins were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. They fed them some fish. Bats were all hiding, and they couldn't see them in the dark.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The text is about Ramez's family's visit to the ....

a) square b) bank c) theater d) wildlife park

2 The underlined word "pouch" means a small place inside the body of the ....

a) parrot b) monkey c) penguin d) kangaroo

B Answer the following questions:

3 What were Ramez's favorite birds?

....

4 Why couldn't they see the bats?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

3

1 near – go – you – lions – Could – the?

....

2 go – Where – yesterday – Ramez – did?

....

3 swim – in – a group – Dolphins – the ocean – in.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1

could you go near the lions

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Wildlife animals"

- How did you go to the wildlife park?
- What did you see there?
- What is your favorite wildlife animal?

....

....

....





Lesson 2
What could you do?
ما الذى استطعت أن تقوم به؟





A Language Focus

Expressing ability and inability التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة

1 can / can't

When we talk about something we are or aren't able to do in the present, we use (can) or (can't).

عندما نتحدث عن شىء نستطيع أو لا نستطيع القيام به فى الوقت الحاضر ، فإننا نستخدم (can) أو (can't).

Form

Subject الفاعل + can/can't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... .



I can play basketball.

أنا أستطيع أن ألعب كرة السلة.



Penguins can't fly.

لا تستطيع البطاريق أن تطير.

Question

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Can).

لتكوين الأسئلة، نقوم بتغيير ترتيب الكلمات وتكون البداية بـ Can.

A: Can + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... ?

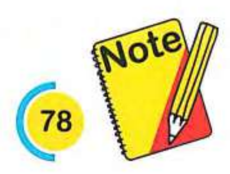
B: Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	can.
B: No,		can't.



A: Can you play tennis?
B: Yes, I can.



A: Can she make a cake?
B: No, she can't.



We use "can" or "can't" with the infinitive without "to".

- نستخدم "can" أو "can't" مع مصدر الفعل بدون "to"

② could / couldn't

When we talk about something we were or weren't able to do in the past, we use (could) or (couldn't).

عندما نتحدث عن شيء كنا قادرين أو غير قادرين على القيام به فى الماضى، فإننا نستخدم could أو couldn't.

Form

Subject (الفاعل) + could/couldn't + (inf) مصدر الفعل ... .



When I was little, I could sit on my dad's knee.

عندما كنت صغيرة، كان بإمكانى الجلوس على ركبة والدى.



I couldn't take the bus, so I had to walk.

لم أستطع ركوب الأتوبيس فاضطررت للمشى.

Question

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Could).

لتكوين الأسئلة ، نقوم بتغيير ترتيب الكلمات وتكون البداية بـ «Could».

A: Could + subject (الفاعل) + (inf) مصدر الفعل ... ?

B: Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	could.
B: No,		couldn't.



A: Could he speak when he was six months old?
B: Yes, he could say "mama" and "dada!".



A: Could you ride a bike when you were three?
B: No, I couldn't.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 When I was little, I (can – are – couldn't – can't) run fast.
2 Sorry, I (can – can't – could – am) help you with your homework. I'm busy now.
3 A: Could you (play – playing – played – plays) chess when you were a child? B: Yes, I could.
4 Bats can (fly – flew – flying – flies) very fast.
5 When I was two, I (can – can't – couldn't – weren't) use a computer.
6 (Can – Could – Are – Do) you speak English when you were five?
7 My cousin couldn't (ran – runs – run – running) when he was a baby.
8 A: (Can – Could – Are – Do) you play the piano? B: Yes, I can.



The travelers and the tree المسافرون والشجرة

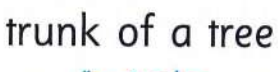
by Aesop كُتبت بواسطة أيسوب



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

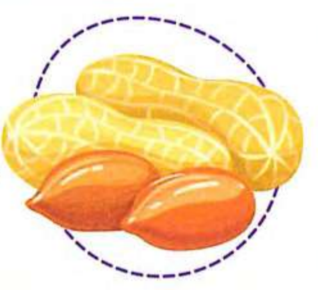




trunk of a tree
جذع شجرة



branch of a tree
غصن شجرة



nuts
فول سودانى



exhausted
مرهق

Extra vocabulary

travelers	مسافرون	dictionary	قاموس
fable	أسطورة	wide (adj.)	واسع / عريض
shelter	ملجأ / مأوى	rest	راحة
traders	تجار	shade	ظل
probably	ربما / من المحتمل	correct (adj.)	صحيح
unkind (adj.)	غير طيب / غير عطوف	humans	البشر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
rest	يستريح	rested	save	ينقذ	saved

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	feel	يشعر	felt

Expressions and Phrases

move across	يتحرك عبر	fell asleep	نام
give shelter	يوفر المأوى	neither of them	لا أحد منهم
one of them	أحدهما	keep ... cool	يحافظ على برودة (شيء)
feel sorry	يشعر بالأسف	give value	يقدّر / يعطى قيمة



breeze نسيم	A breeze is a little wind. النسيم هو ريح خفيفة.
useless عديم الفائدة	When something is useless, we can't use it. عندما يكون هناك شىء عديم الفائدة ، لا يمكننا استخدامه.
ungrateful جاحد (غير شكور)	When someone is ungrateful, they don't thank others for doing something good. عندما يكون شخص ما جاحدًا (غير شكور)، فإنه لا يشكر الآخرين على فعلهم الجيد.
comfortable مريح	When something is comfortable, it's nice to sit on or wear. عندما يكون هناك شىء ما مريح ، فمن الجيد الجلوس عليه أو ارتداؤه.
meeting point نقطة التقاء	A meeting point is somewhere where people meet. نقطة الالتقاء هى مكان حيث يتقابل الأشخاص.

Moral! الدرس الأخلاقى!

A moral is the value you learn from a story you read or from a situation in life.

الخلق (المغزى) هو القيمة التى تتعلمها من قصة تقرؤها أو من موقف فى الحياة.

The moral of the story is that it's important to give value to the small things in our lives.

الدرس الأخلاقى «المغزى» من القصة هو أنه من المهم إعطاء قيمة للأشياء الصغيرة فى حياتنا.

Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن الحروف (tion) فى كلمة (dictionary) تنطق /ʃn/ (شن).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (x) فى كلمة (exhausted) ينطق /gz/ (جز) كما أن حرف الـ (h) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (th) فى كلمة (neither) ينطقان /ð/ (ذ).

Vocabulary Check

- لاحظ أن استخدام (un) و (less) يعطى العكس من الكلمة:

- useful مفيد / useless عديم الفائدة
- grateful شكور / ungrateful جاحد (غير شكور)

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry(1) land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches.

It was famous(2) because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages(3) in its area(4) and was a meeting point for traders.

(1)	جاف
(2)	مشهور
(3)	قرى
(4)	منطقة

ذات يوم، كانت هناك شجرة كبيرة قديمة جدًا فى أرض حارة وجافة. لقد عاشت لسنوات عديدة. كان جذعها عريضًا جدًا وبه العديد من الأغصان الخضراء.
كانت مشهورة لأنها كانت الشجرة الوحيدة فى المكان الذى عاشت فيه، وقد وفرت المأوى والراحة لمئات المسافرين أثناء تنقلهم عبر البلد.. كانت بالقرب من أربع مدن والعديد من القرى فى منطقتها وكانت نقطة التقاء التجار.

The middle

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field(5) and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool(6) breeze. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

(5)	الحقل
(6)	بارد

When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us – there are no nuts or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

فى أحد الأيام، كان مسافران جديدان فى المنطقة يمشيان عبر الحقل ورأيا الشجرة. كان يومًا حارًا وجافًا جدًا وقال أحدهم: «دعنا نتوقف تحت تلك الشجرة، حيث يوجد بعض الظل». قال له صديقه: «هذه فكرة جيدة جدًا». استراحا تحت الشجرة وشربا بعض الماء. ثم استمتعا بالظل والنسيم البارد. ولأنهما كانا مرهقين، سرعان ما ناما.

عندما استيقظا، شعر أحد المسافرين بالجوع. لم يكن لدى أى منهما طعام فى حقائبهما، فنظرا إلى أغصان الشجرة. «هذه الشجرة عديمة الفائدة». قال أحدهما: «لا يوجد بها طعام لنا - لا توجد مكسرات أو فواكه على فروعها». قال الآخر: «لكن لها ظل وهذا يجعلنا نشعر بالبرودة».

The end

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry(7).

(7)	شعروا بالأسف الشديد

لكن الشجرة سمعت كلام المسافر الأول وكانت غاضبة. «كيف يمكنك أن تكون جاحدًا إلى هذا الحد؟» قالت: «أتيت إلىّ وأنت تشعر بالحر والتعب. أعطيتك مكانًا رائعًا ومريحًا للنوم وربما أنقذت حياتك. انظرا، هناك لا يوجد مكان بارد آخر للنوم بالقرب من هنا». نظر المسافران حولهما ورأيا أن الشجرة كانت على حق وشعرا بالأسف الشديد.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 Salma went to the .... with her family.
(a. beach – b. mountain – c. desert – d. park)

2 It was very .... that day.
(a. hot – b. windy – c. rainy – d. cold)

3 The tree .... was very wide.
(a. leaf – b. flower – c. branch – d. trunk)

4 We rested in its shade and drank some ....
(a. juice – b. coffee – c. water – d. tea)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5

1 I like math. I .... solve math problems quickly now.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

2 When he was a baby, he couldn't .... French.
a) spoke b) speak c) speaks d) speaking

3 When something is ...., it's nice to sit on.
a) ungrateful b) useless c) comfortable d) little

4 When someone is ...., they don't thank others for doing something good.
a) sorry b) ungrateful c) sad d) exhausted

5 When something is ...., we can't use it.
a) comfortable b) useless c) ungrateful d) unkind

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

cold – Penguins – colorful – upside – bamboo

I'm Youssef. I love learning about animals. My favorite animal is the penguin. ....(1)........... can't fly. Penguins can swim. They live in very ....(2)........... places. Pandas can climb trees. They eat ....(3)........... and they live in China. Parrots can fly, but they can't swim. They are very beautiful and ....(4)........... . They live in the rainforest.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 under – tree – the – travelers – The – rested.

....

2 speak – Could – one – you – when – you – were?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 5

1 When I was two, I (can't) .... use the computer. SB

2 My sister couldn't run when she was a baby, but now she (could) ....

3 (Could) ....you play the violin?

4 I (could) .... read when I was six months old.

5 (Can) .... you speak English when you were five? SB

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"What could you do when you were younger?"

could run – couldn't speak German – couldn't jump

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3

This is so interesting!

هذا ممتع جدًّا!



Language Focus

(-er) suffix اللاحقة (-er)

A suffix is a group of letters that comes at the end of a word to give it a new meaning.

اللاحقة هى مجموعة من الأحرف تأتى فى نهاية الكلمة لتعطى معنًى جديدًا.

e.g. We can add the suffix (-er) to the end of words to make a noun.

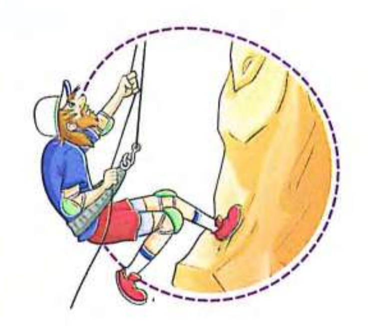
يمكننا إضافة اللاحقة (-er) إلى نهاية الكلمات لتكوين اسم.



teach يُدَرس | teacher مُدرسة



read يقرأ | reader قارئ



climb يتسلق | climber متسلق



football كرة القدم | footballer لاعب كرة القدم



farm مزرعة | farmer مزارع



travel يسافر | traveler مسافر

Adjectives ending in "-ed" and "-ing" الصفات المنتهية بـ "-ed" و "-ing"

(-ed) adjectives

Adjectives that end in (-ed) generally describe feelings – they tell us how people or living things feel.

الصفات التى تنتهى بـ (-ed) عمومًا تصف المشاعر - تخبرنا كيف يشعر الناس أو الكائنات الحية.

annoyed	غاضب
amazed	مندهش
interested	مهتم
tired	تعبان
surprised	متفاجئ

(-ing) adjectives

Adjectives that end in (-ing) generally describe a situation, a thing, or a person that causes the feeling.

الصفات التى تنتهى بـ (-ing) عمومًا تصف موقفًا أو شيئًا أو الشخص الذى يسبب الشعور.

annoying	مزعج
amazing	مدهش
interesting	مثير للاهتمام
tiring	مُتعب
surprising	مدهش / مفاجئ



1 I was so bored in that movie. كنت أشعر بالملل فى هذا الفيلم.
- (bored) describes how I felt about the movie.

"bored" تصف ما شعرت به تجاه الفيلم.

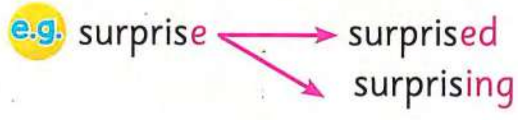
2 That movie was so boring. كان هذا الفيلم مملًا جدًا.
- (boring) describes what the movie was like.

"boring" تصف كيف كان الفيلم.



If the verb ends in "-e", we take off the "-e" and add "-ed" or "-ing".

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ "e-" نحذف الـ "e-" ثم نضيف "ed-" أو "ing-".

e.g. 

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 Sarah is a good (teach – teaching – teacher – teaches).
2 The movie was (bored – boring – amazed – interested). I can't watch it till the end.
3 It's (annoying – annoy – annoys – annoyed) when people talk so loudly.
4 My grandpa is a (farm – farmer – farming – farms), he grows food for us.
5 I ran for 4 kilometers. I was (tired – surprising – annoying – tiring).
6 History is very (bored – interested – interesting – tired).

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

1 Waleed decided to travel west in his .... wearing his vest.
(a. plane – b. car – c. boat – d. bus)

2 He was looking for a ....
(a. volcano – b. tree – c. lake – d. house)

3 The .... turned over his boat.
(a. cats – b. sharks – c. whales – d. dolphins)

4 He had to sit on his .... to stay afloat.
(a. piano – b. violin – c. guitar – d. flute)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 5

1 My grandfather was a great .... He traveled to many great places around the world.

a) traveler b) teacher c) climber d) reader

2 That long walk was very .... I can't wait to get home and relax.

a) tired b) annoyed c) tiring d) bored

3 My cousin is a very good ...., he reads about 20 books a year.

a) climber b) footballer c) farmer d) reader

4 I was so .... in that lesson; I almost fell asleep.

a) boring b) surprising c) interesting d) bored

5 Mo Salah is a famous Egyptian ....

a) climber b) footballer c) traveler d) reader

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

boring – tired – amazing – lunch – annoyed

Yesterday was a very interesting day. I went to work by bus because my car wouldn't start. Then, I went to have ....(1)............ . It was ....(2)............ . Then, I went to the cinema with my friends. The movie was very ....(3)............, so we left. Then, I went home. I was very ....(4)............ . I went to bed at ten o'clock.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



People have different jobs. A teacher is the person who teaches us many interesting things. A teacher is always kind and friendly. The teacher makes everything clear in the class. A footballer is the person who plays football. Egypt has famous footballers like Mohamed Salah and Mohamed Elneny. Mohamed Elneny plays for Arsenal. A farmer works on a farm. He has a very important job; he grows food for us to eat and grow. A climber is someone who goes up high mountains. A climber must be professional enough to climb mountains safely.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The text is about different .... which help us.

a) tools   b) jobs   c) sports   d) foods

2 A .... is the person who goes up high mountains.

a) footballer   b) farmer   c) climber   d) teacher

B Answer the following questions:

3 Mention two famous Egyptian footballers from the passage.

....

4 Why are farmers important?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1

Mr. sami is a great teacher

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Egyptian footballers"

famous footballer – plays for – Mohamed Salah

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project





Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

unusual (adj.)	غير عادى	dugong	الأطوم
nickname	لقب	sea cow	بقرة البحر
sea bed	قاع البحر	email	رسالة إلكترونية (إيميل)

Extra vocabulary

dear	عزيزى	friendly (adj.)	ودود
cute (adj.)	لطيف	grasslands	أراضٍ عشبية
habitat	مكان معيشة	warm (adj.)	دافئ
cool (adj.)	بارد	percent	نسبة مئوية
land surface	سطح الأرض	Earth	كوكب الأرض
eagles	نسور	bison	البيسون (الثور الأمريكى)
wolves	ذئاب	infographic	مخطط معلومات بيانى
desert	صحراء	forest	غابة
polar (adj.)	قطبى	ocean	محيط
heading	عنوان	information	معلومات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hope	يأمل	hoped	check	يفحص / يتأكد	checked

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hear	يسمع	heard	let	يدع / يسمح	let

Expressions and Phrases

Thanks for	شكرًا على	How are things?	كيف هى الأحوال؟
play on a team	يلعب فى فريق	from around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
What about you?	ماذا عنك؟ / وأنت؟	write back	رد على الرسالة
Hope to hear from you soon.	أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريبًا.	make sure	يتأكد



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

New message

From Amir
To Tamer
Subject Unusual animals

Dear Tamer,

Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball and I play on a team once a week.

This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong – can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal?

Write back and let me know.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Amir

عزيزي تامر،

شكرًا على بريدك الإلكتروني. كيف تسير الأمور؟ كان من الممتع حقًا أن تخبرني عن الرياضات التي تحبها. أحب لعبة كرة السلة وألعب في فريق مرة واحدة في الأسبوع.

نتحدث كثيرًا هذا الأسبوع عن الحيوانات غير المألوفة في المدرسة. اطلعنا إلى حيوانات من جميع أنحاء العالم وبعضها من مصر. حيواني غير المألوف المفضل من مصر هو الأطوم - هل يمكنك رؤية الصورة؟ أعتقد أنه يتمتع بوجه ودود جميل وهو لطيف للغاية! لقبه هو بقرة البحر ويقضي ساعات طويلة من تناول العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

وماذا عنك؟ ما هو حيوانك غير المألوف المفضل؟

اكتب مرة أخرى وأعلمني.

أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريبًا.

أمير





How to write an email

Introduction

1 Begin your email with "Dear" or "Hi" and the person's name. ابدأ بريدك الإلكتروني بكلمة «عزيزي» أو «مرحبًا» واسم الشخص.

2 Say why you are writing. Use phrases like "I'm writing to tell you that...".
قل لماذا تكتب. استخدم عبارات مثل «أكتب لك لأخبرك...».

Body

3 Give one idea in a paragraph and expand on it – look how Amir mentions the dugong, then describes it.
أعطِ فكرة واحدة في فقرة وواصل شرحها - انظر كيف يذكر أمير الأطوم، ثم قم بوصفه.

4 When writing to a friend, you can use informal language.

e.g. words like "awesome" and "cool," contractions like "I'm," and phrases like "How's life? and How are things?"
عند الكتابة إلى صديق، يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية، على سبيل المثال كلمات مثل «مدهش» و«رائعة»، واختصارات مثل "I'm" بدلًا من "I am"، وعبارات مثل "كيف الحياة؟ وكيف تسير الامور؟".

End

5 End your email with phrases like "Write soon, Hope to hear from you soon, See you soon, All the best, or Bye for now", and then your name.
قم بإنهاء بريدك الإلكتروني بعبارات مثل «اكتب قريبًا، آمل أن أسمع منك قريبًا، أراك قريبًا، أتمنى لك التوفيق، أو إلى اللقاء الآن» ثم اسمك.

Grasslands Habitat
بيئة الأراضى العشبية

Big heading
عنوان كبير



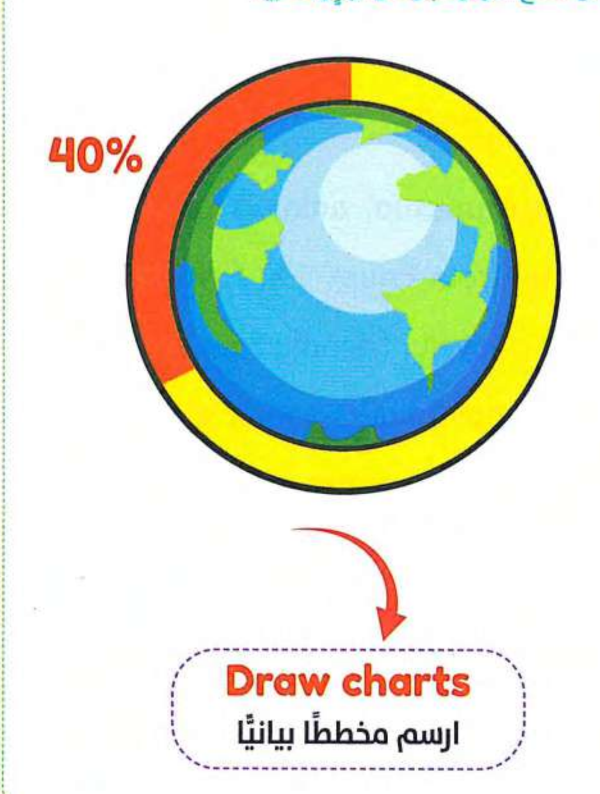
You can find grasslands everywhere. Some grasslands are warm and some are cool.

يمكنك العثور على الأراضى العشبية فى كل مكان. بعض الأراضى العشبية دافئة وبعضها باردة.

Give important information
قدم معلومات مهمة

40 percent of the land surface of Earth is grasslands.

40% من سطح الأرض عبارة عن أراضٍ عشبية.



Some very interesting animals live on grasslands, like eagles, bison, and wolves.

Give examples
قدم أمثلة

تعيش بعض الحيوانات المثيرة للاهتمام فى الأراضى العشبية، مثل النسور والبيسون والذئاب.

Draw charts
ارسم مخططًا بيانيًا

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1 Hana's favorite animal is the ....
(a. dog – b. giraffe – c. lion – d. bat)

2 Hana likes .... animals.
(a. unusual – b. small – c. sea – d. dangerous)

3 Hana's favorite unusual animal is the ....
(a. dugong – b. elephant – c. rabbit – d. penguin)

4 The dugong is from ....
(a. England – b. France – c. Australia – d. Egypt)

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

bed – friendly – dugong – desert – cow

The dugong is an unusual and very interesting animal. The dugong has a lovely ....(1)............ face. It's very cute. The dugong's nickname is the sea ....(2)............ . The ....(3).................. spends many hours eating grass from the sea ....(4).............. every day. The dugong can live up to 70 years.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

I'm Tamer. This week, we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world, some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. I think it's got a lovely, friendly face, and it's very cute! It's nickname is the sea cow, and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day. The dugong can grow to about 3 meters long and weigh as much as 400 kg. The dugong can live for up to 70 years.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "It's" refers to the ....

a) sea grass b) sea bed c) dugong d) Tamer

2 The dugong weighs as much as .... kg.

a) 200 b) 300 c) 400 d) 500

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 How long can the dugong live?

....

4 What does the dugong eat?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

4

1 a team – a week – on – I – once – play.

....

2 got – lovely – has – friendly – A dugong – face – a.

....

3 your – What's – unusual – animal – favorite – , Ola?

....

4 sea – nickname – the – cow – dugong's – is – The.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1

my favorite unusual animal is the dugong

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements.

5

"Penguins"

cold areas – black and white feathers – eat fish

....

....

....

....

Unit 9 REVIEW

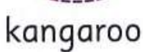


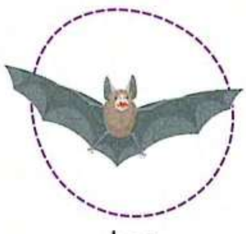
Vocabulary

Wildlife

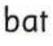

kangaroo


panda




bat


lion


penguin

dolphin


snail


parrot

Language Focus

1 can / can't

Form

Subject + can/can't + (inf) ... .


I can play basketball.

Penguins can't fly.


Question

A: Can + subject + (inf)... ?
OR B: Yes, subject + can.
B: No, subject + can't.



A: Can you play tennis?
B: Yes, I can.

A: Can she make a cake?
B: No, she can't.


2 could / couldn't

Form

Subject + could/couldn't + (inf) ...

When I was little, I could sit on my dad's knee.


I couldn't take the bus, so I had to walk.


Question

A: Could + subject + (inf)... ?
OR B: Yes, subject + could.
B: No, subject + couldn't.

A: Could he speak when he was six months old?
B: Yes, he could say "mama" and "dada!"


A: Could you ride a bike when you were three?
B: No, I couldn't.



CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



Lesson 1

حلزون	....	الكنغر	....
خفاش	....	بطريق	....
ببغاء	....	أسد	....
دلفين	....	باندا	....
حياة برية	....	صدفة	....
محيط	....	نبات الخيزران	....
جراب	....	ثلاجة	....

Lesson 2

جذع شجرة	....	فرع شجرة	....
فول سودانى	....	مرهق	....
قاموس	....	مسافر	....
ملجأ	....	ظل	....
وقح	....	جاحد (غير شكور)	....
نسيم	....	عديم الفائدة	....
مريح	....	نقطه التقاء	....

Lesson 3

مدرس	....	قارئ	....
متسلق	....	لاعب كرة القدم	....
مزارع	....	مسافر	....



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about wildlife animals:

- (نوع من الحيوانات) live in (اسم المكان) ......
- (نوع من الحيوانات) have (أجزاء فى جسم الحيوان) ......
- (نوع من الحيوانات) + (أفعال خاصة بالحيوان) ......
- (نوع من الحيوانات) are (صفات خاصة بالحيوان) ......

Wildlife animals

Snails live in the garden. They have a shell. They don't have legs or arms. Kangaroos live in Australia. They jump on two legs. Penguins live on ice and snow. They are black and white. Birds live in the rainforest. They are very beautiful and colorful. Lions live in Africa. They are very big cats. They are very strong.

How to write about your visit to the wildlife park:

- I had a wonderful day out yesterday with (اسم شخص) .....
- I went to (المكان) ...
- (اسم الحيوان) were + صفة .....
- My favorites were (اسم الحيوان المفضل) ...

My visit to the wildlife park

I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family. I went to the new wildlife park. The kangaroos were interesting. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch. My favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! Penguins were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge.

How to write about an unusual animal:

- This week we're talking about (اسم الموضوع) ...
- I think my favorite is (اسم الحيوان) .....
- (اسم الحيوان) lives in (اسم المكان) ...
- They eat (اسم الأكل) ...
- They are (صفات خاصة بالحيوان) ...

An unusual animal

This week, we're talking about unusual animals at school. I think my favorite unusual animal from China is the panda. Pandas live in forests high in the mountains. They eat bamboo. They are black and white. They can adapt to their environment, which is cold.



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Complete the summary with the words in the box:

project – sad – parrots – park – enjoyed – lions

Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife .... with his family. He .... it very much. They saw lots of different animals like ...., kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the .... He was a bit .... because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a .... on them at school.

2 Circle the correct word:

1 I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I ....

a) can b) can't c) could

2 Last year, he .... run very quickly, but now he can.

a) can't b) could c) couldn't

3 .... you play the piano when you were a child?

a) Can b) Could c) Couldn't

4 Sorry, I .... help you with your homework. I'm busy.

a) can b) can't c) could

3 Circle the correct words:

1 A breeze is a little wind / lake.

2 When something is useless, we can / can't use it.

3 When someone is ungrateful, they thank / don't thank others for doing something good.

4 When something is comfortable, it's nice / not nice to sit on.

5 A meeting point is somewhere where people leave / meet.

Test Yourself 30 UNIT 9





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 Snails don't have .... or arms.
(a. eyes – b. legs – c. ears – d. heads)
2 Kangaroos live in ....
(a. Australia – b. China – c. Egypt – d. France)
3 .... fly at night.
(a. Dolphins – b. Pandas – c. Bats – d. Penguins)
4 Lions live in ....
(a. England – b. Africa – c. Germany – d. Italy)



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 .... are colorful birds and they can talk.
a) Bats b) Parrots c) Snails d) Penguins
2 A .... is a bird. It can swim, but it can't fly.
a) kangaroo b) dolphin c) penguin d) panda
3 A " ...." is a little wind.
a) lake b) breeze c) tree d) meeting point
4 My uncle is a good .... He grows many crops every year. SB
a) teacher b) farmer c) traveler d) reader

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



parrot – intelligent – grass – black – bamboo

Penguins live on ice and snow. They are ....(1)............ and white. They can swim, but they can't fly. A ....(2)............ is a bird. It is very beautiful and colorful. It lives in the rainforest. Dolphins are very ....(3)............ . They swim in a group with their family in the ocean. Pandas live in China. They eat ....(4)............ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



Two men were walking along one hot summer day. At that time, they saw a large tree nearby, and they sat on the ground to rest in its shade. When they woke up, one of the two men was hungry. He said, "What a useless tree this is. It does not have fruit or nuts that we can eat." But the tree heard him and said "Don't be so ungrateful; I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep, and I saved your life". The travelers looked around them, saw the tree was correct, and felt very sorry.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The man was .... and wanted some fruit from the tree.

a) thirsty b) useless c) sorry d) hungry

2 The underlined word '<u>rest</u>' means ....

a) walk b) eat c) relax d) drink

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why was the man ungrateful?

....

4 What did the tree give to the two men?

....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2)

1 in – <u>Snails</u> – shells – live – their – can.

....

2 was – could – <u>When</u> – I – little, – run – I.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 Penguins (can) .... fly.

2 When I was six, I could (speaks) .... English.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

i couldn't speak german last year.

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"My visit to the wildlife park"

I had a wonderful day out – My favorites were

....

....

....



< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 9 AL-AZHAR CORNER



1 Read and complete the dialog:

birds – wildlife – see – go

Marwan : Where did you .... yesterday?

Moaz : I went to the new .... park.

Marwan : What did you .... there?

Moaz : I saw kangaroos, ..., and lions.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Monday, Soha and Habiba went to the wildlife park with their friends. When they arrived, it was very hot in the park. They were surprised because it's such a hot weather in October. They saw lots of different animals and birds such as parrots, kangaroos, and penguins. Soha liked penguins the best. Penguins are her favorite birds. She thinks they look funny with their white and black feathers. Habiba liked pandas. They are huge with thick white and black fur. They liked how they chew bamboo plants. Soha and Habiba had a nice time.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 It was such a hot weather in the .... park.
a) wildlife b) theme c) city d) town

2 Parrots and penguins are ....
a) animals b) people c) birds d) parks

3 Habiba liked the ....
a) bamboo b) pandas c) penguins d) parrots

B Answer the following questions:

4 What do penguins look like? ....

5 What do pandas eat? ....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 can – Lions – very – run – fast.

....

2 can – French – I – speak.

....

3 don't – arms – legs – or – Snails – have.

....

4 unusual – favorite – My – is – the dugong – animal.

....

5 grasslands – on – live – animals – Some.

....

Unit 10

Let's visit Egypt

هيا نزور مصر

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises 

Al-Azhar 

Answers 100% 

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**
- **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**

- listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.
  - يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الأماكن فى المدينة.
- practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something, and to give directions.
  - يتدرب على استخدام صيغة الأمر لإخبار شخص ما أن يفعل أو لا يفعل شيئًا ما، وأن يعطى الاتجاهات.
- practice using questions and short answers.
  - يتدرب على استخدام الأسئلة والإجابات القصيرة.
- read and say words with diphthongs.
  - يقرأ ويقول الكلمات باستخدام الإدغام.
- estimate with mental math.
  - يقدّر باستخدام الرياضيات العقلية.
- write a paragraph about his/her town.
  - يكتب فقرة عن مدينته.
- make a poster about his/her perfect town.
  - يصمم ملصقًا عن مدينته المثالية.

Did you know?

- Fayoum is the oldest town in Egypt. *Archaeologists think it is more than 7,000 years old.

I can find it out!

- Today, the *population of Fayoum is *approximately 3.8 million. The population in Cairo where I live is about 10.201.183.

* archaeologists	علماء الآثار	* population	الكثافة السكانية	* approximately	تقريبًا



Lesson 1

We love Alexandria!

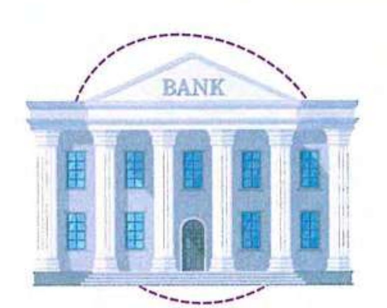
نحن نحب الإسكندرية!





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



bank
بنك



factory
مصنع



monument
أثر



shopping mall
مركز للتسوق



square
ميدان



library
مكتبة



station
محطة

Extra vocabulary

stores	متاجر (محلات)	markets	أسواق	museum	متحف
Germany	ألمانيا	sweet (adj.)	حلو (المذاق)	roof garden	حديقة السطح
mint tea	شاى بالنعناع	relaxing (adj.)	مريح	local (adj.)	محلى
cuisine	مأكولات	traditional (adj.)	تقليدى	fresh (adj.)	طازج
lovely (adj.)	جميل	ingredients	مكونات	friendly (adj.)	ودود
originally	فى الأصل	Barcelona	برشلونة	mix	مزيج
culture	ثقافة	traditions	عادات		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
chat	يتحادث	chatted	own	يملك	owned
serve	يقدم (الطعام)	served	remind	يُذكّر	reminded

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
think	يعتقد	thought	sit	يجلس	sat
drink	يشرب	drank	buy	يشترى	bought

Expressions and Phrases

I haven't been to any yet.	لم أذهب إلى أى منها بعد.	spend ages	نقضى الكثير من الوقت
on vacation	فى عطلة	show (someone) around	يرى (شخص ما) المنطقة بالجوار

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. - الإسكندرية مكان رائع حقًا لزيارته.

- It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums.
- إنها مدينة كبيرة بها الكثير من المطاعم، المتاجر، الأسواق والمتاحف الرائعة.

- Many tourists love to visit Alexandria. - العديد من السياح يحبون زيارة الإسكندرية.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 My dad went to the (square – bank – library – station) to get some money.

2 Mom and I went to the (square – factory – station – shopping mall) and bought some amazing clothes.

3 I like reading at the (bank – factory – library – station). It's often quiet.

4 I always take the train at the (square – station – factory – library) to Alexandria.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach!
We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think...

الإسكندرية مكان رائع للزيارة. هناك الكثير لتراه وتفعله هنا! إنها مدينة كبيرة بها العديد من المطاعم والمتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف الرائعة. حتى إن هناك شاطئًا! سألنا بعض الناس الذين يعيشون هناك والسياح عما يعتقدونه ...



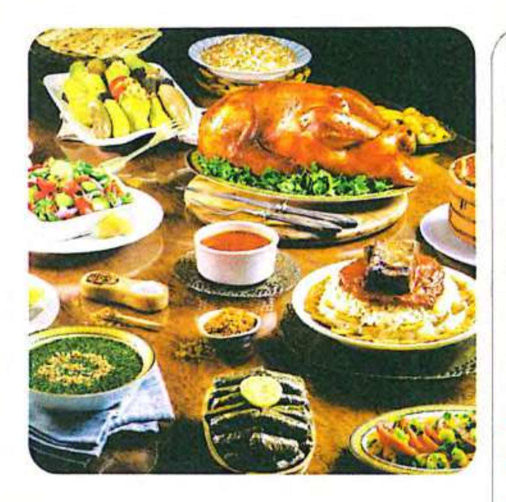


Jens

I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

أنا أزور الإسكندرية من ألمانيا. الأمر حقًّا رائع هنا. أعتقد أنه يوجد بعض المتاحف الجيدة، ولكنى لم أذهب إلى أى منها بعد. إننى فقط أحب الجلوس فى حديقة السطح الخاصة بالفندق، وأشرب الشاى بالنعناع المصرى اللذيذ، وأتحدث مع أشخاص آخرين. إنه أمر مريح جدًّا.







Hanan



I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

عشت فى الإسكندرية طوال حياتى. أمتلك مطعمًا هنا ؛ ولذلك يتوجب علىَّ دعوتك لزيارة المطعم لتجرب بعض المأكولات المحلية. نحن نقدم أطعمة مصرية تقليدية باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة وجميلة. لدينا العديد من المتاجر الرائعة ولكنى أفضل شراء المكونات من سوق المدينة القديمة.



Kira and Lena

We're from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria – the shopping malls! We spend ages walking around them. We like the people. They are so friendly!

نحن من مدينة صغيرة فى إنجلترا. المتاجر ليست جيدة جدًّا هناك. هذا أكثر شىء نحبه فى الإسكندرية - مراكز التسوق! يمكننا قضاء الكثير من الوقت فى التجول حولها. نحن نحب الناس. هم ودودون جدًّا!







Karim

I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank.
My favorite place is the beach – there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in summer, so it's great to go there and swim.

أنا مصرى، فى الأصل من القاهرة. انتقلت إلى الإسكندرية العام الماضى ، وأحب المكان هنا. أنا أعمل فى بنك.
مكانى المفضل هو الشاطئ - لا يوجد شاطئ فى القاهرة! يمكن أن يصبح الجو حارًّا جدًّا فى الصيف، لذلك من الرائع الذهاب إلى هناك والسباحة.

Paulo

I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home – a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old buildings. Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions.
The library is amazing!

أنا فى عطلة هنا من برشلونة. أنا أحب الإسكندرية؛ لأنها تذكرنى بموطنى - مدينة كبيرة وعصرية بالقرب من البحر.
أنا أحب هذا المزيج من المبانى الحديثة والقديمة. كما أحب أيضًا اكتشاف الثقافة والتقاليد. المكتبة رائعة!



Listening script 



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Sara

I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.

سأزور عمتي وعمي. نحن ذاهبون بالقطار.





My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the Pyramids.

ابن عمي سيقوم بزيارتنا وسوف نريه المنطقة في الجوار. لم يسبق له أن رأى الأهرامات.

Ahmed





Dina

We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses.

ذهبنا في رحلة مدرسية لمعرفة كيف يتم تحويل القطن إلى ملابس مثل التيشرتات والفساتين.





I want to borrow some books.

أريد استعارة بعض الكتب.

Youssef



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1. Kira and Lena are visiting .... this week.
   (a. Luxor – b. Alexandria – c. Cairo – d. Aswan)
2. They are from a small town in ....
   (a. France – b. America – c. England – d. China)
3. There are many .... and shopping malls in Alexandria.
   (a. seas – b. people – c. stores – d. buildings)
4. People in Alexandria are so ....
   (a. noisy – b. quiet – c. friendly – d. fresh)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (5)

1. I want to borrow some books. I need to go to the ....
   a) station b) library c) bank d) office
2. We went to the .... to find out how cotton is turned into clothes.
   a) factory b) square c) mall d) museum
3. Tourists like to visit museums to watch ....
   a) clothes b) trains c) restaurants d) monuments
4. It's great to go to the .... and swim when it's hot.
   a) market b) beach c) store d) garden
5. I'm on .... in Germany. It's my summer holiday.
   a) project b) vacation c) traditions d) cultures

3 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Paulo is from Barcelona. He is on vacation in Alexandria this summer. Paulo likes to spend the summer in Alexandria because there are many things to see and do there. He stays in a big hotel with a small roof garden on top. He likes to sit there, drink sweet Egyptian mint tea, and chat with other people. He likes to visit local restaurants from time to time to try some of the traditional Egyptian cuisine. They are usually made from lovely, fresh ingredients. Paulo likes the people in Alexandria. They are so friendly!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Paulo likes to drink .... on the roof garden.
   a) water b) mint tea c) juice d) coffee

2 The underlined word "cuisine" means ....

a) stores b) markets c) foods d) clothes

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where is Paulo from?

....

4 What does Paulo like to do in Alexandria?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

4

1 some – to – books – want – borrow – I.

....

2 good – There – museums – some – are – Alexandria – in.

....

3 from – a small – They're – in – town – England.

....

4 likes – mint – Jens – drinking – tea – Egyptian.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

2

1 why do you love alexandria?

....

2 I'm egyptian, originally from cairo.

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Alexandria"

exciting place – amazing restaurants – a beach

....

....

....

....



Language Focus

Imperatives صيغة الأمر

- We use "imperatives" to tell someone to do or not to do something.

نستخدم صيغة الأمر لنقول لشخص ما أن يفعل أو لا يفعل شيئًا ما.

- Imperatives don't usually begin with a subject like "you, she or they". Imperatives usually start with a verb.

صيغة الأمر عادة لا تبدأ بفاعل مثل «أنت، هى أو هم». صيغة الأمر عادة تبدأ بالفعل.

Form:

Affirmative imperatives:

Use the "infinitive" without "to": نستخدم الفعل فى المصدر من غير "to":

Infinitive (مصدر الفعل) ... .



Pick up that trash, please.

التقط تلك القمامة، من فضلك.

Negative imperatives:

Use "Don't + infinitive" without "to": نستخدم " Don't + infinitive" بدون "to":

Don't + infinitive (مصدر الفعل) ... .



Don't eat in the library, please.

لا تأكل فى المكتبة، من فضلك.



Don't talk loudly, please.

لا تتحدثوا بصوت عالٍ، من فضلكم.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 Please, (sits – sit – sat – sitting) down.
2 (Doesn't – Didn't – Don't – Doing) waste your time.
3 Don't (was – is – are – be) late tomorrow.
4 (Be – Is – Was – Has) careful! You can fall down.





Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Teacher

OK, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.

حسنًا يا أطفال. نحن هنا الآن. هذه مكتبة الإسكندرية.



Reem

Wow! It's amazing. Can we go inside?

رائع! شيء مذهل. هل يمكننا الدخول؟



Teacher

Wait a moment, is everybody here? Yes. OK. Let's go in.

انتظر لحظة، هل الجميع هنا؟ نعم. حسنًا. هيا ندخل.



Ali

I'm going first!

أنا ذاهب أولًا!



Teacher

Don't run, Ali. Walk quietly. This is a very important place.

لا تركض يا علي. امشِ بهدوء. هذا مكان مهم جدًّا.



Ali

I'm sorry.

أنا آسف.



Noha

Can we go upstairs to the Children's Library?

هل يمكننا الصعود إلى مكتبة الأطفال؟





Teacher



Yes. Go into the elevator. Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one button, Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up!

نعم. اذهبوا إلى المصعد. جيد. ارجعوا للخلف. الأبواب تغلق. لا تقفز صعودًا وهبوطًا يا علي! ادفع الزر رقم واحد يا طارق. رائع، شكرًا لك. وهانحن نتحرك للأعلى!

Asking about and giving directions السؤال والإجابة عن الاتجاهات

When we ask about directions, we say:
عندما نسأل عن الاتجاهات، نقول:

- Excuse me, how do I get to + place (المكان)?
- Where is the + place (المكان), please?
- Is there + a/an place (مكان) + near here?

We use the imperative to give instructions:
نستخدم الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات:

Go straight. / Cross the road. / Turn right/left.



Excuse me, how do I get to the library, please?
عذرًا، كيف أصل إلى المكتبة رجاءً؟



Go straight, turn right. It's on your left.
اتجه مباشرة ثم انعطف يمينًا. إنه على يسارك.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 Excuse me, (where – who – what – how) do I get to the supermarket?
2 A: (What – When – How – Where) is the music room? B: Go Straight, it's on your left.
3 (Is – Are – Do – Does) there a museum near here?
4 (Goes – Go – Went – Going) straight, the museum is on your right.
5 A: Excuse me, (what – when – where – what) is the art class?
B: It's on the left.
6 Go straight, (turns – turned – turn – turning) right. It's on the corner.





• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 They are at Alexandria ....
(a. Museum – b. Mall – c. Library – d. Store)

2 You mustn't .... in the place.
(a. read – b. walk – c. look – d. run)

3 They can go .... in the elevator.
(a. right – b. upstairs – c. left – d. straight)

4 They pushed number .... button.
(a. one – b. two – c. three – d. four)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 A: How do I .... to the library? B: Turn right. It's on your left.

a) read b) waste c) get d) pick

2 .... waste your time, Sama.

a) Do b) Doesn't c) Don't d) Didn't

3 .... there a clothes store near here?

a) Are b) Is c) Do d) Be

4 Don't talk .... Be quite, please.

a) slow b) loudly c) polite d) quite

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

on – left – library – across – at

This is Alexandria Library. It's amazing. To get to the ....(1)............ from the station, go straight. Turn ....(2)............ at the end of the road. Then, turn right. The library is ....(3)............ the left. The entrance of the shopping mall is ....(4)............ from you. Just cross the road.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



1. do – How – the – to – museum – I – get?

   ....

2. in – Don't – library, – the – please – eat.

   ....

3. a – read – to – book – Choose – good.

   ....

4. up – down, – Ali – Don't – and – jump.

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:



1. (Doesn't) .... write in the book.
2. Where (are) .... the clothes store?
3. Please Ali, (didn't) .... eat in the class.
4. Don't (shouts) .... Speak quietly.
5. (Are) .... there a library near here?
6. We are going. Please (got) .... ready in 10 minutes.
7. Don't (smoking) .... here.
8. (Took) .... medicine before you go to bed.

6 Punctuate the following:



1. is there a station near here

   ....

2. don't walk on the grass

   ....



Lesson 3





Story



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

lost (adj.)	تائه/ مفقود	ibis	طائر أبو منجل
strange-looking (adj.)	غريب المنظر	creature	مخلوق
jerboa	الجربوع	foolish (adj.)	أحمق

Extra vocabulary

villager	قروي	sack	شوال
branches	فروع	unkindly	بقسوة
crowds	الجماهير	funny-looking (adj.)	مضحك المنظر
rudely	بطريقة وقحة	stranger	غريب
market traders	تجار السوق	dark (adj.)	مظلم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized	pretend	يتظاهر	pretended
entertain	يسلي	entertained	apologize	يعتذر	apologized

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
give	يعطي	gave	begin	يبدأ	began

Expressions and Phrases

walk far	يمشي بعيدًا	tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
get dark	تظلم (يصبح الجو مظلمًا)	go alone	يذهب بمفرده

Gabi Learns a Lesson جابى يتعلم درسًا

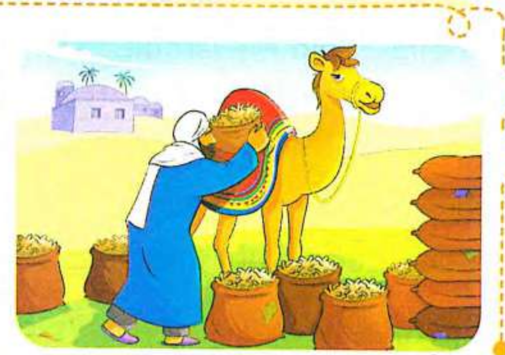


Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans – I will take them to the market for you."

Gabi walked along the road(1). He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize the road.



فى يوم من الأيام أراد القروى أن يبيع الفول فى السوق. لكنه لم يستطع أن يمشى بعيدًا. عرض عليه جَملَه (جابى) قائلًا «دعنى آخذ شوال الفول - سآخذه إلى السوق من أجلك».

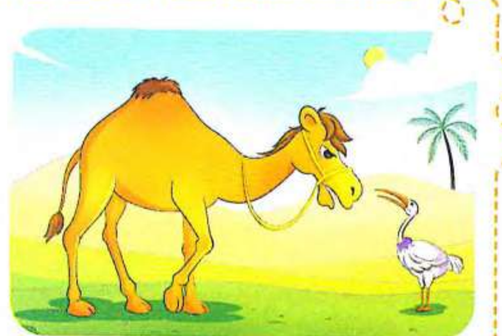
مشى جابى على طول الطريق. انعطف يسارًا ثم يمينًا ثم يسارًا مرة أخرى. بعدها لم يتعرف جابى على الطريق.

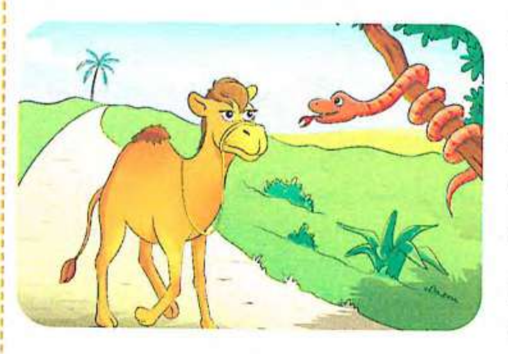
(1) طريق

The middle

"Are you lost?" called an ibis. Gabi had never seen such a strange-looking bird.

"No, I'm not lost," pretended Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high(2) above the land(3) and tell him the way.





Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree.

"You look lost," said the snake.

"No, I'm not," said Gabi – again he wasn't telling the truth.

"Anyway(4), even if I was, you can't help – you haven't even got legs," he said unkindly. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.

(2) يطير عاليًا

(3) الأرض

(4) على أى حال

«هل أنت تائه؟» صاح طائر أبو منجل. لم ير جابى من قبل طائرًا غريب الشكل كهذا.

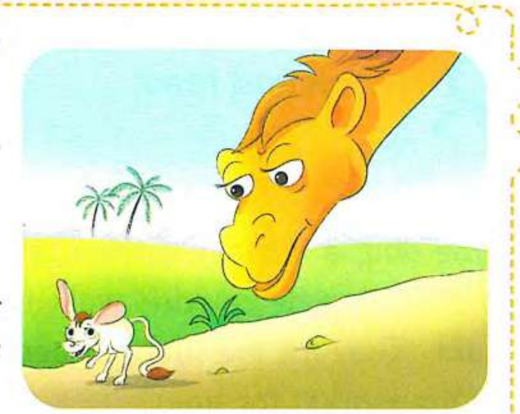
«لا. أنا لست تائهًا.» تظاهر جابى ولم يكن يعرف أن طائر أبو منجل يستطيع أن يطير فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.

رأى جابى ثعبانًا يشاهده من على أغصان الشجرة.

«هل أنت تائه؟» قال الثعبان.

«لا، أنا لست تائهًا.» قال جابى - مرة أخرى لم يكن يقول الحقيقة. «على أى حال فحتى لو كنت تائهًا، لما استطعت مساعدتى - أنت ليست لديك أرجل حتى. قال جابى بقسوة. لم يكن جابى يعرف أن الثعبان يذهب إلى السوق كل يوم ليقوم بعروض لتسلية الجماهير.

The end



It began to get dark. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.

"What a funny-looking creature. Look at those enormous(5) ears," he thought to himself.

"Hello," said the jerboa. "Do you need any help?"

"No, I don't!" replied Gabi rudely. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the sounds(6) of the market traders.

"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.

Soon, it was completely(7) dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was foolish and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and to ask for their help the next day.

(5)	ضخم/هائل
(6)	أصوات
(7)	تمامًا

بدأ الجو يظلم. رأى جابى حيوانًا صغيرًا على الطريق أمامه.

«ياله من مخلوق مضحك الشكل. انظروا إلى هذه الأذن الضخمة.» فكر جابى مع نفسه.

«مرحبًا، هل تحتاج إلى أى مساعدة؟» قال الجربوع.

«لا . لا أحتاج» رد جابى بطريقة فظة ولم يكن يعرف أن الجربوع يمكنه أن يسمع أصوات تجار المدينة.

«حسنًا إذن، ليلة سعيدة.» صاح الجربوع.

سريعًا أصبح الجو مظلمًا تمامًا، وفهم جابى أنه يحتاج لمساعدة تلك الحيوانات. عرف أنه كان أحمق وشعر بالأسف. قرر جابى أن ينام ويتأسف لتلك الحيوانات ويطلب مساعدتها فى اليوم التالى.

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Gabi got lost on his way to the market.

- فقد جابى طريقه إلى السوق.

- Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high and tell him the way.

- لم يكن جابى يعلم بأن طائر أبو منجل يمكنه أن يطير عاليًا ويخبره بالطريق.

- Gabi saw a snake and a jerboa, they could help too.

- رأى جابى الثعبان والجربوع، كان يمكنهم المساعدة أيضًا.

- At the end, Gabi knew he was foolish and he decided to apologize the next day.

- فى النهاية، عرف جابى أنه كان أحمق وقرر أن يعتذر فى اليوم التالى.

Check point

1 Where was the camel going?

....

2 Did the snake help the camel?

....

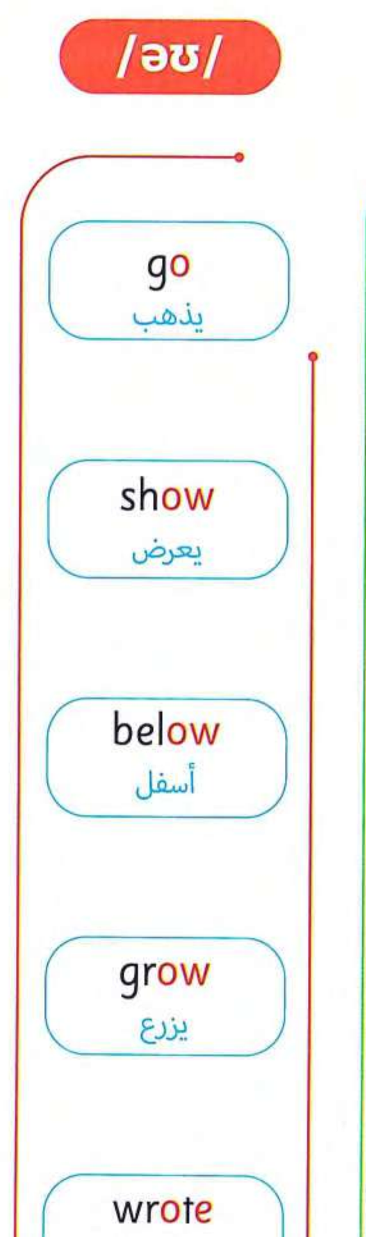


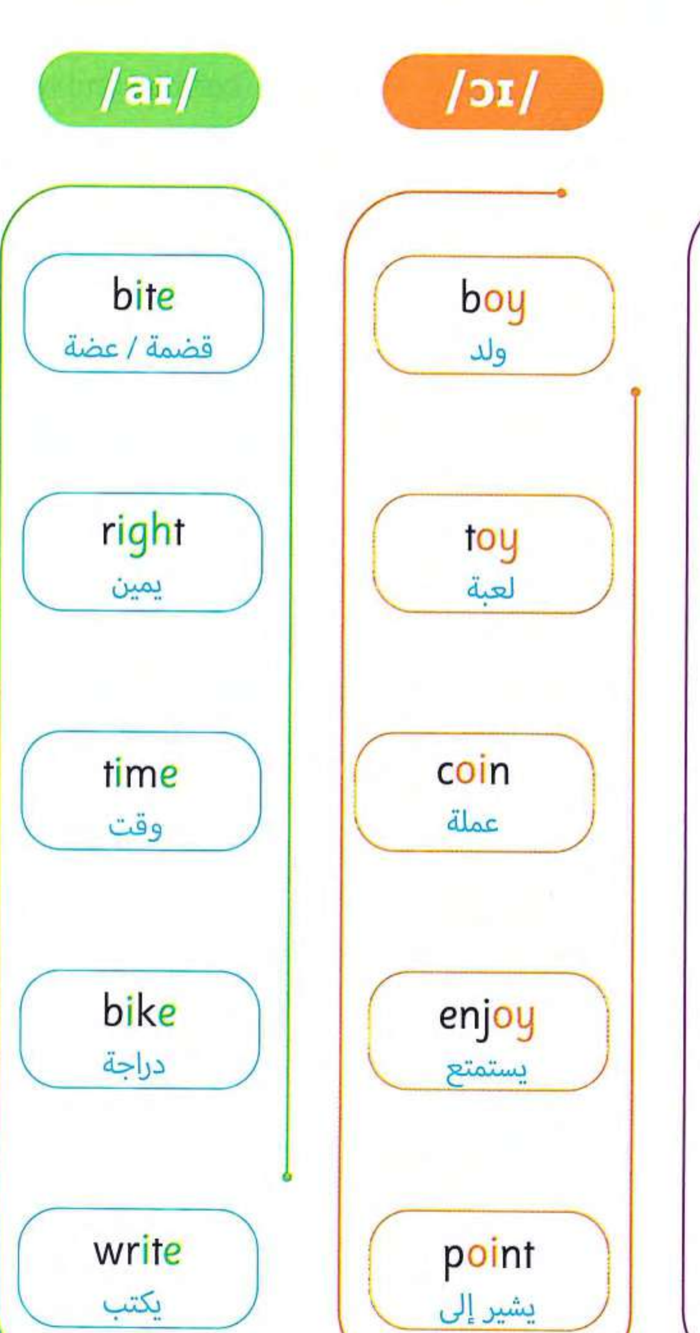


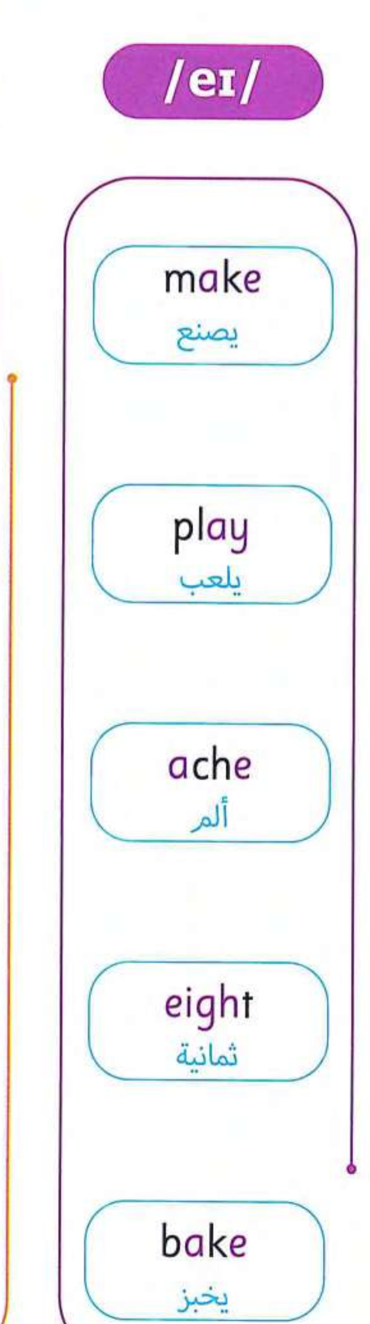


Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

The same sound is sometimes spelled in different ways:
يتم تهجئة نفس الصوت أحيانًا بطرق مختلفة:











Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

An estimated answer isn't the actual answer. It's a good guess.

الإجابة التقديرية ليست الإجابة الحقيقية ولكنها تخمين جيد.

e.g.

1 How much will ten tomatoes, five carrots, and two eggplants be, please?

كم سيكون سعر عشر ثمرات من الطماطم، خمس جزرات وثمرتين من الباذنجان، من فضلك؟

2 They will be around 50 Egyptian pounds.

سيكون السعر حوالى 50 جنيهًا.

-5- -4- -3- -8- -6- -3- -4- -5-



We can use the following expressions to talk about estimated answers:

يمكن استخدام التعبيرات التالية للتحدث عن الإجابات التقديرية :

- It's around ... . - It's about .... . - It's near .... . - It's close to ... .

بمعنى "تقريبًا/حوالى".

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Gabi, the ...., was lost.
(a. sheep – b. goat – c. camel – d. horse)

2 The jerboa has enormous ....
(a. nose – b. mouth – c. eyes – d. ears)

3 Gabi refused any ....
(a. help – b. food – c. water – d. money)

4 He knew he was .... and he was sorry.
(a. clever – b. foolish – c. nice – d. polite)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 5

1 When we make a mistake, we should ....
a) offer b) apologize c) recognize d) begin

2 He is foolish. He speaks ....
a) nicely b) rudely c) politely d) well

3 The snake has no ....
a) head b) ears c) legs d) eyes

4 I went to the doctor, I had a/an ....
a) ache b) toy c) coin d) bike

5 I got .... yesterday. I couldn't find my way to the market.
a) worried b) lost c) strange d) foolish

3 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Gabi is a helpful camel. He took the sack of beans to sell it for the villager. On his way to the market, he got lost. First, Gabi met an ibis. The ibis offered to help the camel, as he could fly above the land and tell him the way. But Gabi pretended he wasn't lost and refused any help. Then, Gabi met a snake. The snake offered to help, as he goes to the market every day to entertain the crowds. Gabi refused any help, and he was unkind to the snake.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Gabi is a/an ....
a) ibis b) camel c) snake d) villager

2 The underlined word "entertain" means to make people feel ....
a) happy b) sad c) tired d) sick

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 How did Gabi help the villager?

....

4 Who offered to help Gabi?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

4

1 offered – help – Gabi – the – to – villager.

....

2 could – land – The ibis – the – above – fly.

....

3 the – Gabi – telling – truth – wasn't.

....

4 you – any – Do – help – need?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

2

1 no, I'm not lost

....

2 You haven t even got legs

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Asking for help"

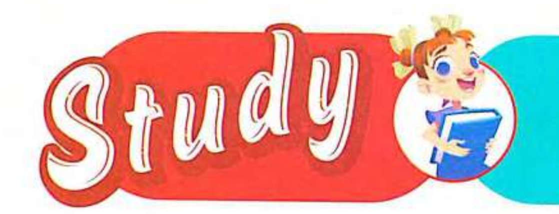
What was the problem?
Who could help you?
How can you thank them at the end?

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project



Main vocabulary

tourist attractions	أماكن جذب سياحى	theater	مسرح
relaxing (adj.)	مريح	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ

Extra vocabulary

fun (adj.)	ممتع	amazing (adj.)	مذهل
famous (adj.)	مشهور	Buckingham Palace	قصر باكينجهام
British Museum	المتحف البريطانى	boat trip	جولة بالقارب
River Thames	نهر التايمز	bridge	كوبرى
plenty of	وفرة من	beautiful (adj.)	جميل
International Park	الحديقة الدولية	fascinating (adj.)	ساحر / جذاب
history	تاريخ	area	منطقة
Archaeological Center	المركز الأثرى	treasures	كنوز
perfect (adj.)	رائع	waterpark	ملاهى مائية
open (adj.)	مفتوح	shade	ظل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
rain	يمطر	rained	worry	يقلق	worried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
choose	يختار	chose	feed	يطعم	fed

Expressions and Phrases

it doesn't matter	لا يهم	lots of	الكثير من
go on a bus	يذهب على متن الحافلة	all over the world	فى جميع أنحاء العالم
right in the middle of	تمامًا فى المنتصف من	It's free to go in!	الدخول مجانى!



London مدينة لندن

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

إنها واحدة من أكثر المدن الممتعة فى العالم. عادة ما تمطر هنا ولكن هذا لا يهم حيث يوجد العديد من الأشياء الممتعة لتقوم بها. يمكن أن تذهب فى جولة إلى الأماكن السياحية المختلفة فى حافله حمراء كبيرة. سوف يمكنك رؤية العديد من الأماكن المشهورة كقصر باكينجهام والمسارح والمتحف البريطانى. يمكنك أن تذهب فى رحلة مريحة بالقارب فى نهر التايمز وتعبر من أسفل الكبارى المشهورة. كل هذا التجول سيجعلك تشعر بالجوع. ولكن لا تقلق، يوجد العديد من المطاعم المختلفة التى يمكنك أن تختار من بينها. يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم!

Tip! When you try to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.

عندما تحاول تشجيع الناس على الذهاب إلى مكان ما، استخدم الصفات الإيجابية لوصف المكان.

NEW ALAMEIN مدينة العلمين الجديدة



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city. You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

هناك العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التى يمكنك القيام بها فى العلمين الجديدة. المدينة على الشاطئ ؛ لذا يمكنك زيارة البحر البارد عندما يكون الجو حارًا. يبلغ طول هذا الشاطئ الجميل ١٤ كم! توجد أيضًا بحيرة خضراء كبيرة فى وسط المدينة. يمكنك أيضًا زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة. إذا كنت ترغب فى التعرف على التاريخ الخلاب للمنطقة، فقم بزيارة المركز الأثرى. هناك بعض الكنوز المدهشة.
لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك فى العلمين الجديدة.

Steps of writing a paragraph to describe your town or city:

خطوات كتابة فقرة لوصف مدينتك

A Write notes about the good things of your town.
اكتب ملاحظات عن الأشياء الجيدة فى مدينتك.

B Write about famous tourist attractions.
اكتب عن أماكن الجذب السياحى فى مدينتك.

C Write about the location.
اكتب عن الموقع.

D Write about the history/culture/art.
اكتب عن التاريخ/ الثقافة/ الفن.

Our perfect town مدينتنا الرائعة



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals.

It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in!

فى بلدتنا الرائعة، توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجانب المدرسة. يمكننا الذهاب هناك فى كل ظهيرة بعد الحصص الدراسية. يمكننا أن نساعد فى إطعام الحيوانات.

إن الجو حقًّا حار فى مدينتنا، لذلك توجد حديقة ألعاب مائية مفتوحة دائمًا، يمكنك الدخول بلا مقابل.



There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables.

There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade.

This is our perfect town!

يوجد العديد من الأسواق الرائعة التى تبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة المختلفة، كالخبز الطازج والفواكه والخضراوات الطازجة.

توجد حديقة كبيرة بها العديد من الأشجار لذلك يمكننا الذهاب فى نزهات عائلية فى الظل.

هذه هى مدينتنا الرائعة!

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 It often .... in London.
(a. snows – b. heats – c. rains – d. warms)

2 You can go on a big .... bus.
(a. red – b. green – c. blue – d. yellow)

3 You will see famous places like the .... Museum.
(a. American – b. French – c. Egyptian – d. British)

4 You can take a relaxing .... trip on the River Thames.
(a. taxi – b. train – c. metro – d. boat)

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

middle – Park – beach – high – long

New Alamein is on the ....(1)............ so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms ....(2)............ ! There is also a large, green lake right in the ....(3).................. of the city. You can also visit the beautiful International ....(4)............... . If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

My name is Ola. I live in a big apartment with my family in New Alamein. New Alamein is a new Egyptian city. It's a wonderful place with many tourist attractions. The International Park is a very famous place to visit. There is also a large lake, a theme park, and shopping malls. The city is on the beach, so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. The beach is over 14 kilometers long. The Archaeological Center is my favorite place to visit. There are some amazing treasures there.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 New Alamein is a new .... city.
a) American b) British c) Egyptian d) French

2 The .... is Ola's favorite place to visit.
a) International Park b) lake
c) Archaeological Center d) beach

B Answer the following questions:

3 How long is the beach in New Alamein?

....

4 What are there at the Archaeological Center?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

4

1 eat – What – can – we – in – London?

....

2 beach – city – The – on – is – the.

....

3 plenty – of – There – different – are – restaurants.

....

4 feed – can – to – the – help – animals – We .

....

5 Punctuate the following:

2

1 don't miss the beautiful International Park

....

2 There are many exciting things to do in new alamein

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"My perfect town"

- Where do you live?
- How is the weather in your city?
- What things can tourists do in your city?

....

....

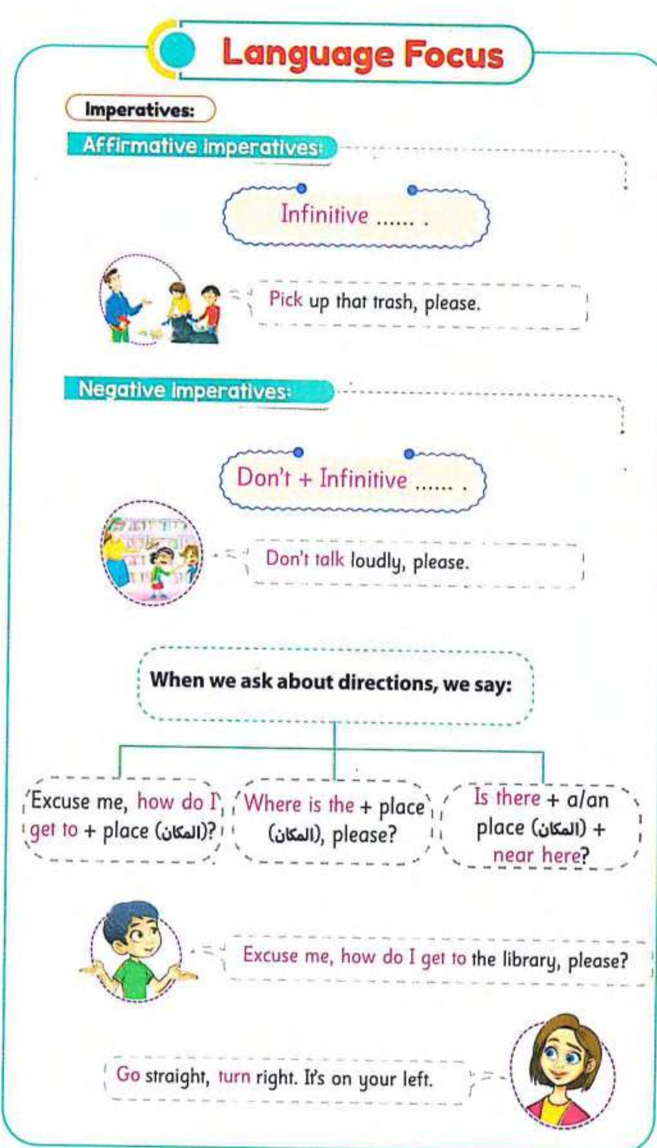
....

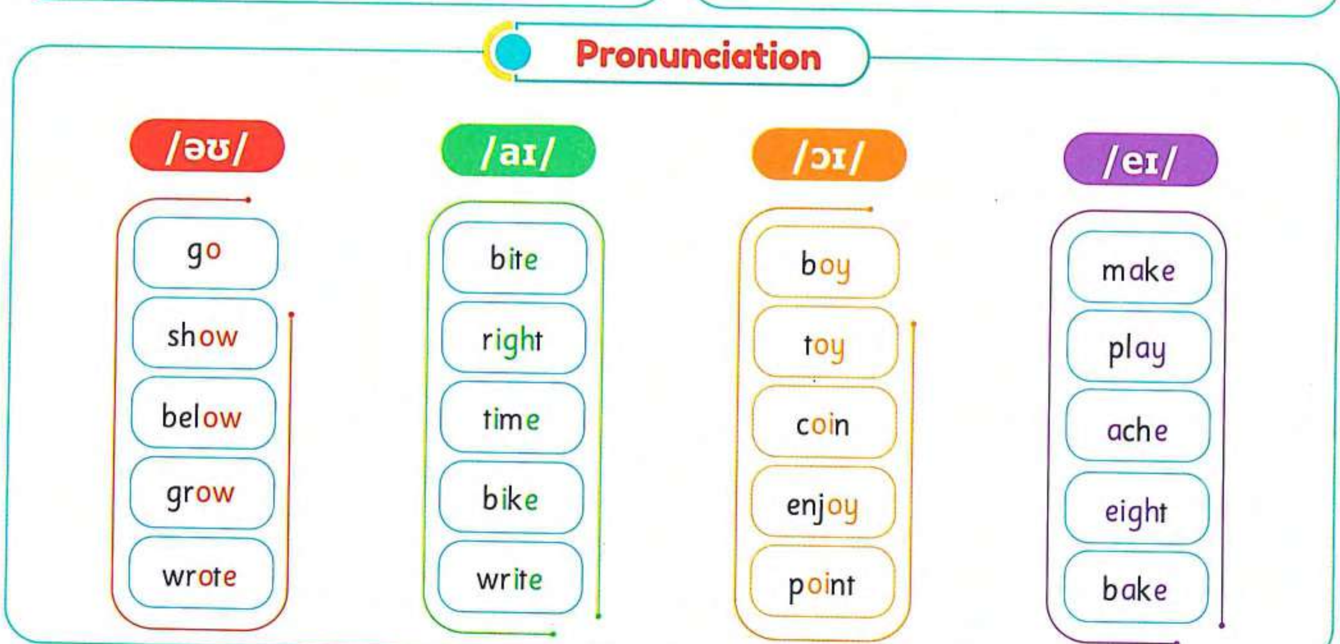
....

Unit 10 REVIEW













Lesson 1

بنك	....	مركز للتسوق	....
مكتبة	....	أثر	....
ميدان	....	محطة	....
مطاعم	....	أطباق	....
متاجر	....	عادات	....

Lesson 3

تائه	....	طائر أبو منجل	....
تجار السوق	....	قروى	....
فروع	....	شوال	....
يذهب	....	يعرض	....
الجماهير	....	كتب	....
أسفل	....	يمين	....
قضمة/ عضة	....	دراجة	....
وقت	....	ولد	....
يكتب	....	عملة	....
لعبة	....	يشير إلى	....
يستمتع	....	يلعب	....
يصنع	....	ثمانية	....
ألم	....	يخبز	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about Alexandria as a tourist:

- Alexandria is (وصف للمدينة) ... .
- I'm visiting Alexandria from (مدينتك الأصلية).
- There are (معالم مشهورة فى الإسكندرية) ... .
- I love (أشياء تحب أن تقوم بها فى الإسكندرية) ... .

Alexandria

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. There are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

How to write about directions to a place:

- To get to the (المكان) from the (مكان آخر), go straight.
- Turn left ... .
- Then, turn right ... .
- The (المكان) is on the left.
- Just cross the road.

The directions to Alexandria Library:

This is Alexandria Library. It's amazing. To get to the library from the station, go straight. Turn left at the end of the road. Then, turn right. The library is on the left. Just cross the road.

How to write about your town or city:

- There are many exciting things to do in (اسم المدينة) ... .
- The city is (الموقع) ... .
- There is (معالم فى المدينة) ... .
- You can visit (أماكن تاريخية فى المدينة) ... .
- You can also visit (أماكن تاريخية أخرى فى المدينة)... .

New Alamein

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city. You can visit the beautiful International Park. You can also visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there.

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.



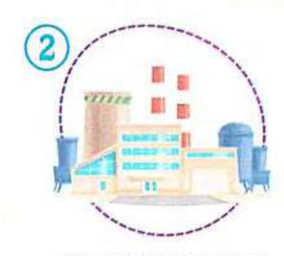
STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

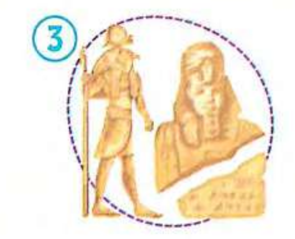
1 Look and write:

station – factory – library – monument – bank – square – shopping mall

① 

....

② 
....

③ 
....

④ 
....

⑤ 

....

⑥ 
....

⑦ 

....

2 Read the library rules. Rewrite the rules with imperatives:

1 You shouldn't eat in the library. ....
2 You have to bring your book back in two weeks. ....
3 You need to drink your water outside. ....
4 You cannot use your mobile phone here. ....
5 You should not lose your book. ....
6 Make sure you enjoy the books! ....

3 Reorder the words to make imperative sentences:

1 book / Choose / a / good / to read.

....

2 talk / loudly, / Don't / please.

....

3 write / in / Don't / the book.

....

4 the book / Return / its place / to.

....

Test Yourself 30 — UNIT 10





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 There is a big .... right next to the school.
(a. club – b. park – c. zoo – d. garden)

2 We can help to feed the ....
(a. animals – b. birds – c. people – d. visitors)

3 It is really .... in our town.
(a. cold – b. hot – c. warm – d. snowy)

4 It's free to go in the ....
(a. class – b. waterpark – c. zoo – d. school)



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 You keep your money safely in the ....
a) bank b) square c) shopping mall d) store

2 This is where you go to catch a train. It is the ....
a) station b) factory c) library d) monument

3 We went to the .... to find out how cotton is turned into clothes.
a) restaurant b) factory c) station d) square

4 When you make a .... mistake, you should apologize.
a) nice b) good c) foolish d) kind

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



ingredients – cuisine – Alexandria – market – town

I'm Hana. I've lived in ....(1).......... all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local ....(2).......... . We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ....(3).......... . We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the ....(4).......... in the old town.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market. But he couldn't walk far. His camel offered to help him and take the sack of beans to the market. The camel walked along the road. He turned right, then left, and then he turned right again. The camel didn't recognize the road and he thought he was lost.



Then, the camel met a nice ibis who flew above the land and told him the right way. The camel thanked the ibis and they became friends.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The text is about a camel going to the ....

a) park b) pool c) school d) market

2 The camel thought he was ....

a) happy b) excited c) lost d) helpful

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did the villager want to do? ....

4 How did the ibis help the camel? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2)

1 the – must – <u>You</u> – cuisines – try – local – some of.

....

2 mall – I – shopping – <u>How</u> – get to – the – do?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 Don't (ate) .... in the library.

2 (Going) .... straight, then turn left.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

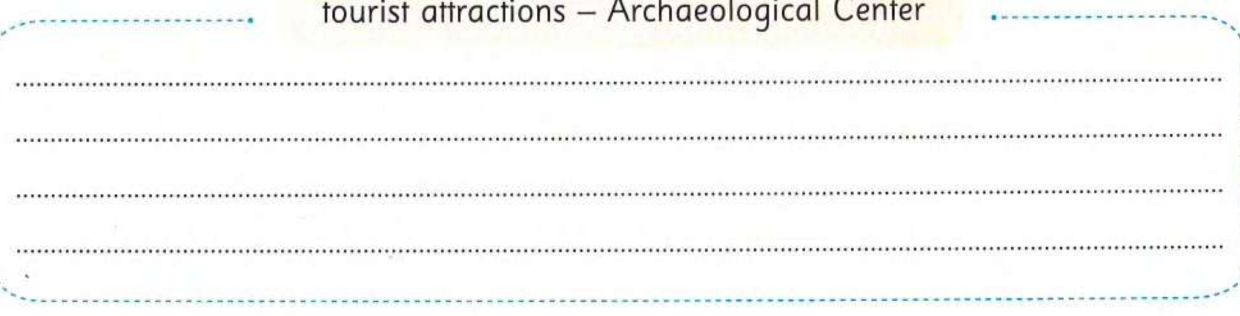
don't talk loudly, please

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"New Alamein"

tourist attractions – Archaeological Center









< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 10 AL-AZHAR CORNER

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Sara is from (Egypt – England – Germany).
2. Sara thinks there are some good (schools – museums – stores).
3. She loves sitting in the roof of her (house – home – hotel).

2 Read and complete the dialog:

Alamein – International – live – visit

Reham : Where do you .... ?

Leen : I live in New (1) ....

Reham : What can I (2) .... there?

Leen : You can visit the beautiful (3) .... Park.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. I want to (borrow – lend – buy) books from the school library.
2. Don't (talking – talk – talks) loudly, please.
3. A: (When – How – Where) is the shopping mall, please? B: It's on your right.
4. Our restaurant (apologizes – recognizes – serves) the best pasta in town.
5. I saw beautiful (cuisine – rains – monuments) at the museum.



Unit 11

Vacations

الإجازات

Unit Overview

Student's Book Exercises | Al-Azhar | Answers 100% Q&A

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about vacations.
- practice using prepositions of time.
- listen to a conversation.
- learn about different types of triangles.
- read and say words with the "th" sound.
- think about his/her perfect vacation.
- write a diary entry for his/her best day on vacation.
- make a poster for a vacation destination.

- يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الإجازات.
- يتدرب على استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.
- يستمع إلى محادثة.
- يتعلم عن أنواعًا مختلفة من المثلثات.
- يقرأ وينطق كلمات بصوت الـ «th».
- يفكر فى إجازته المثالية.
- يكتب يومياته عن أفضل يوم له فى الإجازة.
- يصنع ملصقًا عن وجهته لقضاء عطلة.

Did you know?

- Egypt is one of the most popular vacation *destinations in the world. Millions of tourists visit Egypt every year.

I can find it out!

- The best places to visit in Egypt are the Great Pyramids of Giza, the Egyptian Museum, the Luxor Temple, the Karnak Temple, the Valley of the Kings, and more.

*destinations وجهات



Lesson 1

A world trip رحلة حول العالم





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary





ticket
تذكرة



suitcase
حقيبة سفر



hotel
فندق



tourist
سائح



passport
جواز سفر



swimming pool
حمام سباحة

Extra vocabulary

trip	رحلة	husband	زوج	business	عمل
India	الهند	Singapore	سنغافورة	hotel room	حجرة فندقية
floor	دور/ طابق	view	منظر	roof	سطح
flight	رحلة جوية	airport	مطار	vanilla	فانيليا
Japan	اليابان	bay	خليج	theme park	مدينة الملاهي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
receive	يستقبل	received	pack	يحزم أمتعة	packed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
forget	ينسى	forgot	find	يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

get through	يعبر	straight away	على الفور
high-rise buildings	مبانٍ شاهقة الارتفاع	take about six hours	تستغرق حوالى ست ساعات
spend time	يقضي وقتًا	go on a boat trip	يذهب فى رحلة على متن قارب
so much fun	الكثير من المرح		



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) فى كلمة (island) حرف صامت (silent) لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (gh) فى كلمة (flight) حرفان صامتان (silent) لا ينطقان.

Vocabulary Check

لاحظ أنه يمكننا تكوين صفة من كلمتين بوضع الـ (-) بينهما:

high (adj.) عالٍ + rise (n.) ارتفاع = high-rise (adj.) شاهق الارتفاع

Important sentences جمل هامة

- Nadia and her husband are on a business trip. - نادية وزوجها فى رحلة عمل.
- This week, they are in Singapore. - هذا الأسبوع هما فى سنغافورة.
- It's hot in Singapore – about 36 degrees. - الجو حار فى سنغافورة - حوالى ٣٦ درجة.
- Singapore is a wonderful city. - سنغافورة مدينة رائعة.
- There are lots of high-rise buildings and many parks, gardens, and trees.
  - يوجد الكثير من المبانى الشاهقة والعديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 Free (suitcases – tickets – hotels – pools) to the museum are available only to students.

2 We stayed at a/an (suitcase – pool – hotel – island) by the beach.

3 We need our (jackets – passports – bottles – photos) to travel from one city to another.

4 A lot of (tickets – tourists – hotels – suitcases) come to visit Egypt every year.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hani. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hani were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud(1) to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.

استلمت الأم اليوم بريدًا إلكترونيًا من أختها نادية وزوجها هانى. هما فى رحلة عمل حول العالم. كانت نادية وهانى فى الهند الأسبوع الماضى، وهما فى سنغافورة هذا الأسبوع. تقرأ الأم البريد الإلكترونى بصوت عالٍ لابنتها رنا وابنها على.

To Samiax@mail.com

Subject My trip

Dear Samia,

Hello to you all from Singapore! It's hot here – about 36 degrees(2). Luckily(3), we've got a lovely hotel room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable(4) and we both slept.
It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived – we got our suitcases straight away.









عزيزتى سامية،

مرحبًا بكم جميعًا من سنغافورة! الجو حار هنا - حوالى ٣٦ درجة. لحسن الحظ، لدينا غرفة فندقية جميلة. نحن فى الطابق ٤٢. المنظر جميل ويمكننا رؤية الشاطئ. يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق! هل يمكنك تصديق ذلك؟ استغرقت الرحلة من الهند حوالى ست ساعات، لكنها كانت مريحة وكلانا نام. لم يستغرق عبور المطار وقتًا طويلًا عندما وصلنا - لقد حملنا حقائبنا على الفور.

(1)	بصوت عالٍ
(2)	درجات
(3)	لحسن الحظ
(4)	مريح


Send



Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special(5) place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists(6) to an island. There is a theme park. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!
I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!
Love,
Nadia

(5) مميز
(6) سياح

سنغافورة مدينة رائعة. هناك الكثير من المباني الشاهقة، ولكن هناك أيضًا العديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار للجلوس تحتها والاسترخاء. تعد حدائق الخليج مكانًا خاصًا حقًا ؛ حيث توجد الزهور والنباتات من جميع أنحاء العالم. لقد أمضينا وقتًا طويلًا هناك. قد تنسى حقًا أنك في وسط مدينة مزدحمة.

بالأمس، ذهبنا في رحلة بالقارب مع بعض السياح الآخرين إلى إحدى الجزر. توجد مدينة ملاهي. كان الأمر ممتعًا للغاية! بعد ذلك قمنا بزيارة متحف الآيس كريم! تناولت آيس كريم «ملكة النحل» وهو الفانيليا والعسل مع الشوكولاتة. كان رائعًا! أتمنى أن تكونوا جميعًا بخير. سنسافر إلى اليابان غدًا وسأرسل لك بريدًا إلكترونيًا آخر عند وصولنا. الآن عليَّ أن أجد تذاكرنا وجوازات سفرنا وأن أحزم حقائبنا مرة أخرى!



Send

Think!

What does "Take only photos, leave only footprints" mean?
It means don't take anything you find in the woods ... like flowers, fungi, roots, animals, small trees, etc. But you can take pictures of them with your camera. The "leave only footprints" part means don't leave any trash behind you except for your footprints.

ماذا يعنى «التقط صورًا فقط، اترك آثار أقدام فقط»؟

هذا يعنى عدم أخذ أى شىء تجده فى الغابة ... مثل الزهور، والفطريات، والجذور، والحيوانات، والأشجار الصغيرة، وما إلى ذلك، ولكن يمكنك التقاط صور لها بالكاميرا. الجزء «اترك آثار أقدام فقط» يعنى عدم ترك أى قمامة خلفك باستثناء آثار أقدامك.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (5)

1 You have to pack your .... before traveling.

a) bottles b) suitcases c) tourists d) flights

2 It's very hot today; we'll go to the ....

a) swimming pool b) museum c) hotel d) city

3 We are going on a business .... to Singapore next week.

a) ticket b) hotel c) trip d) park

4 We live in an apartment on the 6th ....

a) roof b) pool c) floor d) hotel

5 The .... is the top part of a building.

a) park b) pool c) hotel d) roof

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

give – around – Bay – spend – buildings

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise ....(1)............, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the ....(2)............... is a really special place. There are flowers and plants from all ....(3)............ the world. You can ....(4)............ exciting time there.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Nadia and her husband, Hani, are on vacation in Singapore. It's hot – about 36 degrees. They stay in a lovely hotel room on the 42nd floor. The hotel is special. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel. The view is beautiful and they can see the beach. Yesterday, they went on a boat trip to an island. There is a theme park. After that, they visited the museum of ice cream! They had a "Queen Bee" ice cream cone, which is vanilla and honey with chocolate.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Nadia and Hani are ....

a) at work b) at home c) on vacation d) at a friend's house

2 The underlined word "huge" means ....

a) low b) little c) big d) small

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why is the hotel special?

....

4 What is a "Queen Bee" ice cream cone?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

4

1 our – We – straight – suitcases – away – got.

....

2 swimming – the roof – a huge – on – There's – pool.

....

3 lots – buildings – of – There – high-rise – are.

....

4 tomorrow – We – fly – to – will – Japan.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1

Where did you stay in singapore

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"My trip to Singapore"

lovely hotel room – took about six hours – see the beach

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2





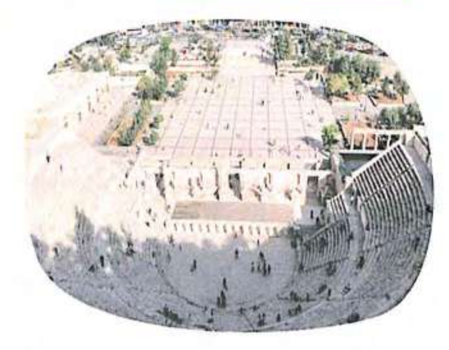
A special trip رحلة مميزة



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary


Amman Citadel
قلعة عَمان


Roman Amphitheater
المدرج الرومانى


Archaeological Museum
متحف الآثار


Abu Jaber Museum
متحف أبو جابر


Dead Sea
البحر الميت

Extra vocabulary

Zambia	زامبيا	leaflet	منشور	Jordan	الأردن
Amman	عَمان	traditional (adj.)	تقليدى	Jordanian (adj.)	أردنى
tour	جولة	local (adj.)	محلى	day trip	رحلة نهارية
ancient (adj.)	قديم	culture	ثقافة	art	فن
destination	وجهة (المكان المقصود)	crafts	مصنوعات	mud	طين
relaxed (adj.)	مريح	airport	مطار	diary	مذكرات يومية
home	الوطن (البلد الأم)	chance	فرصة	handicrafts	أعمال يدوية
stalls	أكشاك	rug	سجادة صغيرة	tour guide	مرشد سياحى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعــال منتظمــة	
Present	**Past**	**Present**	**Past**
explore يستكشف	explored	discover يكتشف	discovered
describe يصف	described	wander يتجول	wandered

Irregular verbs		أفعــال غير منتظمة	
Present	**Past**	**Present**	**Past**
spend يقضى	spent	leave يغادر	left

Expressions and Phrases

desert tours	جولات صحراوية	check in	يسجل دخول
free time	وقت فراغ	head out of	يخرج من
trading center	مركز تجارى	the best ever	الأفضل على الإطلاق
bus ride	ركوب الحافلة	quite quickly	بسرعة كبيرة



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حروف (tion) فى كلمة (traditional) تنطق /ʃn/ (شن).

Important sentences جمل هامة

- When you arrive to Amman, you can have traditional dinner at the Memphis restaurant.

- عند وصولك إلى عمّان، يمكنك تناول العشاء التقليدى فى مطعم ممفيس.

- You can visit the famous Amman Citadel.

- بإمكانك زيارة قلعة عمان الشهيرة.

- You can spend the evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets.

يمكنك قضاء المساء بالتجول فى أسواق عمّان المتعددة الألوان.

- In the ancient town of As-Salt, you can find lots of local Jordanian culture.

- فى مدينة السلط القديمة، يمكنك أن تجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية.

- No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea.

- لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن دون رحلة إلى البحر الميت.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1 It's important to be .... on the road.
(a. sad – b. tired – c. safe – d. angry)

2 You .... a helmet on your bike.
(a. needs – b. don't need – c. need – d. doesn't need)

3 You need a seat belt in your ....
(a. car – b. plane – c. train – d. ship)

4 You need a green light to .... the road.
(a. wait – b. go – c. park – d. cross)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5

1 Naglaa only crosses the road when the light is ....

a) red b) green c) yellow d) blue

2 My dad needs a .... in his car.

a) helmet b) camel c) seat belt d) sign

3 Stop here and .... for a green light to be safe on the road.

a) turn b) swim c) draw d) wait

4 You .... swim here. It's very dangerous.

a) can b) need c) needs d) can't

5 You can't .... your bike here.

a) drive b) ride c) do d) swim

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

light – left – right – bike – road

I read about road safety. It's important to be safe on the ....(1)............ . You need the green ....(2)............ to cross the road. You need to look right and ....(3)............ before you cross the road. You need a helmet on your ....(4)............ . You need a seat belt in your car.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

5

1 You need (at) .... look left and right.

2 You need a green light to (crossing) .... the road.

3 Ali (need) .... a helmet on his bike.

4 You need to (going) .... straight.

5 Lara needs to (is) .... more careful on the road.

5 Punctuate the following:

2

1 you can t swim here.

....

2 stop here and wait for a green light

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Road safety"

be safe – green light – look left and right

....

....

....

....

....

....





Lesson 3





A Be careful on the roads!

كن حذرًا على الطريق!



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

road	طريق	safety	أمان
motorbike	دراجة بخارية	crosswalk	ممر مشاة
ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	hospital	مستشفى

Extra vocabulary

middle	منتصف	fast (adj.)	سريع	scared (adj.)	خائف
shocked (adj.)	مصدوم	boring (adj.)	ممل	road signs	إشارات الطريق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
love	يحب	loved	cross	يعبر	crossed
call	يستدعى/يتصل بـ ...	called	follow	يتبع	followed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
drive	يقود	drove	fall	يسقط	fell
hurt	يجرح	hurt	understand	يفهم	understood

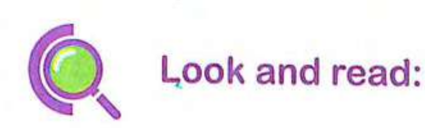
Expressions and Phrases

be careful on the road	انتبه على الطريق	a young man	شاب صغير السن
in a hurry	على عجلة من أمره	drive through	يقود عبر
fall over	يسقط	call for	يستدعى / يطلب
do right	يفعل الصواب	listen for cars	يستمع لأصوات السيارات



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ed) ينطقان /t/ (ت) كما فى (shocked).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) فى كلمة (sign) "silent" لا ينطق.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind [1]. Hani is a young [2] man. He works in the city and he goes to work by motorbike. Today, he was in a hurry.




(1) طيب

(2) صغير فى السن

مازن و داليدا أخوان. إنهما يحبان مدرستهما. معلموهما طيبون للغاية. هانى شاب صغير . يعمل فى المدينة ويذهب إلى عمله بالدراجة البخارية. اليوم كان على عجلة من أمره.

The middle

Mazen and Dalida walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk. Today, they walked to the crosswalk and waited [3] for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road. Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk.



(3) انتظر

Then Hani drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast.

Mazen fell over. He was very shocked. Dalida was scared, but she wanted to help her brother.

يذهب مازن و داليدا إلى المدرسة معًا سيرًا على الأقدام. إنهما يعبران الطريق عبر معبر المشاة. اليوم، ذهبا إلى معبر المشاة وانتظرا حتى تتوقف السيارات، ثم مشيا على الطريق. مشى مازن إلى منتصف معبر المشاة، ثم قاد هانى دراجته البخارية خلال معبر المشاة. لم يتوقف لأنه كان يقود مسرعًا للغاية. وقع مازن. كان مصدومًا للغاية. كانت داليدا خائفة، ولكنها أرادت أن تساعد أخاها.

The end

Hani stopped to help. Mazen wanted to go to school, but he hurt his leg. Hani called for an ambulance.

Mazen is now at the hospital with his mom and sister. Hani is feeling very bad.

توقف هانى ليقدم المساعدة. أراد مازن أن يذهب للمدرسة، ولكن رجله كانت مصابة. طلب هانى الإسعاف. مازن حاليًا فى المستشفى مع والدته وأخته. هانى يشعر بالسوء.

Check point

1 How does Hani go to work? ....

2 Where are Mazen and Dalida going? ....



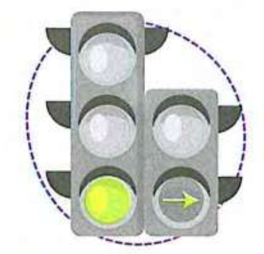


must

We use "must" or "mustn't" for strong advice.

نستخدم «must» أو «mustn't» لإعطاء نصيحة قوية.

Subject فاعل + must / mustn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... .



You must wait for the green lights before you cross the road.

يجب عليك انتظار الضوء الأخضر قبل أن تعبر الطريق.



You mustn't run on roads.

لا يجب أن تجرى على الطريق.



When we take notes, we don't write the complete sentences. We write important words.

عندما نقوم بتدوين الملاحظات، لا نكتب جملًا كاملة. نكتب كلمات مهمة.



Note: must listen for cars

Sentence: You must listen for cars.

Check point

Choose the correct answer:

1 You (must – shouldn't – mustn't – can't) wear a seat belt in a car.
2 You (mustn't – can't – must – shouldn't) be careful while crossing the road.
3 You must (follows – followed – following – follow) road signs.
4 You must (cross – crosses – crossed – crossing) the road at the crosswalk.
5 You (can't – shouldn't – mustn't – must) wait for the cars to stop before crossing the road.
6 You (must – should – mustn't – need) play on the road.



Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

cr /kr/

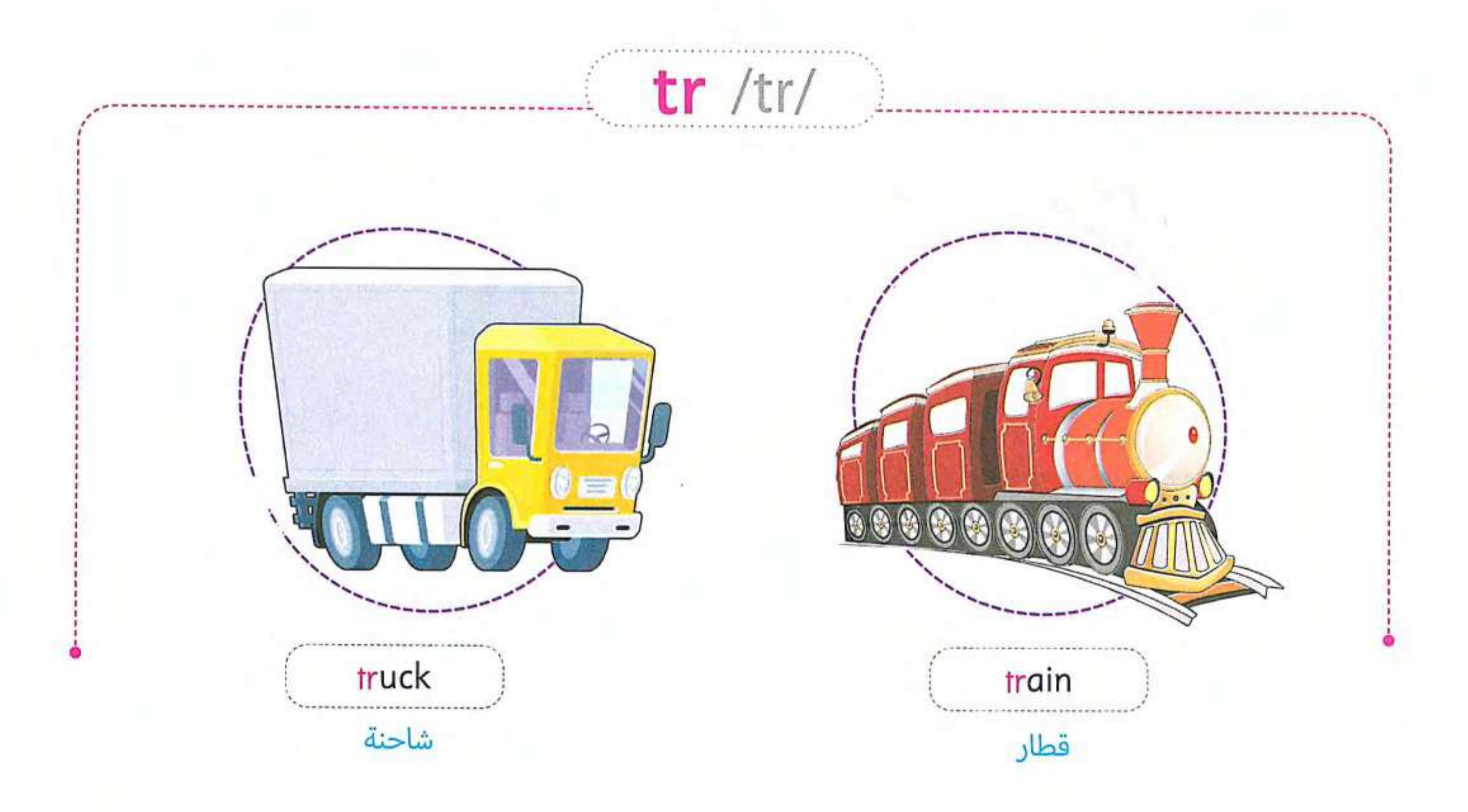


crowd
زحمة

crash
يصطدم

crosswalk
معبر المشاة

tr /tr/



truck
شاحنة

train
قطار

Diphthongs (long vowels):

الأصوات المركبة (حروف العلة الطويلة):

A diphthong is a vowel sound made by pronouncing two vowels quickly one after the other.

الصوت المركب هو صوت متحرك يتم إجراؤه عن طريق نطق حرفين متحركين بسرعة واحدًا تلو الأخرى.

ai /eɪ/

rain مطر	snail حلزون	train قطار

oa /oʊ/

boat مركب	coat معطف	float تطفو

ea /i:/

clean ينظف/ نظيف	dream حلم	sea بحر



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1 Mazen and Dalida are brother and ....
(a. dad – b. mom – c. uncle – d. sister)

2 Their teachers are very ....
(a. tired – b. sad – c. kind – d. angry)

3 They wait for the cars to ....
(a. run – b. stop – c. walk – d. arrive)

4 They never cross the .... until the light is green.
(a. river – b. sea – c. road – d. farm)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 When someone is hurt, we call for the ....
a) car b) taxi c) bus d) ambulance

2 Hani was in a .... because he was late for work.
a) road b) hurry c) crosswalk d) shock

3 You must cross the road at the ....
a) right b) left c) crosswalk d) straight

4 He didn't stop because he was going too ....
a) slow b) happy c) fast d) sad

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

ambulance – fast – hurry – lights – crosswalk

Hani is a young man who works in the city. One day, Hani was late for work so he was in a ....(1)............ . He drove his motorbike ....(2)............ . Mazen and his sister Dalida were walking on the ....(3)............ . Hani couldn't stop. Mazen fell over and Hani called for an ....(4)............ .





4 Read the text and answer the questions:

...... 6

Ali and Rana are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind and helpful. Osama is a young man. He works in the city and he goes to work by motorbike. Today, he was in a hurry. Ali and Rana walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk. They walked to the crosswalk and waited for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road. Ali walked to the middle of the crosswalk.

Then Osama drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast. Ali fell over. He was very shocked. Rana was scared. Osama stopped to help. Ali wanted to go to school, but he hurt his leg. Osama called for an ambulance.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Osama goes to his work by a ....

a) car b) taxi c) motorbike d) bus

2 The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

a) Ali b) Osama c) Rana d) Ali and Rana

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why do Ali and Rana love their school?

....

4 How did Osama help Ali?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

...... 4

1 You (must) .... walk in the middle of the road.

2 You must (wears) .... a helmet when you ride your bike.

3 You must (crossing) .... the road at the crosswalk.

4 You (mustn't) .... wait for the green lights before you cross the road.

6 Punctuate the following:

...... 2

1 hani mustn't drive fast

....

2 today, dad was in a hurry

....



Lesson 4



Air pollution

تلوث الهواء



استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

pollution	تلوث	chemicals	مواد كيمائية	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
electric buses	أتوبيسات تعمل بالكهرباء	straw	قش	photosynthesis	عملية التمثيل الضوئي

Extra vocabulary

dirty (adj.)	متسخ	London	لندن	England	إنجلترا
Shenzhen	تشجن (مدينة بالصين)	China	الصين	burning	حرق
Paris	باريس	Copenhagen	كوبنهاجن	Denmark	الدانمارك
worried (adj.)	قلق	son	ابن	asthma	مرض الربو
heating	جهاز التدفئة	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	excellent (adj.)	ممتاز
growth	نمو	parents	الوالدان	shade	ظل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	cycle	يركب الدراجة	cycled
stop	يتوقف	stopped	allow	يسمح	allowed
cover	يغطي	covered			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
make	يصنع	made	put	يضع	put

Expressions and Phrases

take a bus	يستقل الأتوبيس	First of all, ...	أولًا
cut the amount	يخفض الاستهلاك	a long way from	على مسافة بعيدة من
open fires	مدفأة مكشوفة	That's helpful!	هذا مفيدا!



- لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ch) فى كلمة (chemicals) ينطقان /k/ (ك).
- لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (zh) فى كلمة (Shenzhen) ينطقان /dʒ/ (دج).
- لاحظ أن حروف الـ (sth) فى كلمة (asthma) تُنطق /z/ (ز).



انظر واقرأ:



Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous.
Air pollution is dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.
Does this happen to you in your city or town? Is the air dirty or clean?

المدن بها الكثير من السيارات. السيارات تسبب تلوث الهواء. يضعون المواد الكيميائية فى الهواء. لا يمكننا دائمًا رؤية المواد الكيميائية، لكنها خطيرة.
يشكل تلوث الهواء خطورة علينا. عندما نتنفس الهواء الملوث، نسعل ونشعر بالمرض. هل هذا يحدث لك فى مدينتك أو بلدتك؟ هل الهواء متسخ أم نظيف؟



Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near the school.

تحاول بعض المدن وقف تلوث الهواء. فى لندن، إنجلترا، الآباء لا يقودون أطفالهم إلى المدرسة. يمشى الأطفال أو يذهبون إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. السيارات لا تقترب من المدرسة.



In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

فى تنشجن، الصين، لديهم أتوبيسات كهربائية. هذه الأتوبيسات لا تسبب تلوث الهواء.



In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have cleaner air.
To do that, they stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.

فى الغربية، مصر، أراد المزارعون الحصول على هواء أنظف. للقيام بذلك، توقفوا عن حرق قش الأرز. استخدموا القش لصنع طعام لحيواناتهم وتغطية محاصيلهم.



In Paris, France, cars can't go into some parts of the city.
In these places, you can only walk or take a bus.

فى باريس، فرنسا، لا يمكن للسيارات الذهاب إلى بعض أجزاء من المدينة. فى هذه الأماكن ، يمكنك المشى أو ركوب الأتوبيس فقط.



In Copenhagen, Denmark, there are more bikes than people and large parts of the city don't allow cars.

فى كوبنهاجن، الدانمارك، عدد الدراجات أكبر من عدد الناس ، وأجزاء كبيرة من المدينة لا تسمح بالسيارات.

These are all good ideas to stop air pollution in cities.
Which idea do you like best?

هذه كلها أفكار جيدة لوقف تلوث الهواء فى المدن. أى فكرة تفضلها أكثر؟



1 What do cars make? ....

2 How did people in London stop air pollution? ....



Listening script 



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Today I am talking to Doctor Helen Walker about air pollution. Helen, why are you worried about this subject?

أتحدث اليوم مع الدكتورة هيلين واكر عن تلوث الهواء. هيلين ، لماذا أنتِ قلقة من هذا الموضوع؟







Because one of my sons has very bad asthma and I think it is because of the dirty air in our city. I wanted to say something to help him and other children.

لأن أحد أبنائى يعانى من الربو الشديد وأعتقد أنه بسبب الهواء القذر فى مدينتنا. أردت أن أقول شيئًا ما أساعده وأساعد الأطفال الآخرين.

Interviewer



What can we do to help make the air cleaner?

ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل للمساعدة فى جعل الهواء أنظف؟







I have some ideas. First of all, we need to cut the amount we use our cars. We can try to buy from stores near our house. Children can try to walk to school.

لدى بعض الأفكار. أولًا، نحتاج إلى خفض مقدار استخدامنا لسياراتنا. يمكننا محاولة الشراء من المتاجر القريبة من منزلنا. يمكن للأطفال محاولة المشى إلى المدرسة.





But sometimes children live a long way from school.

لكن فى بعض الأحيان يعيش الأطفال على بعد مسافة طويلة من المدرسة.





Helen

Then they could go by bike or maybe take the bus.

إذًا يمكنهم الذهاب بالدراجة أو ركوب الحافلة.



Interviewer

Good idea, many schools have buses. What are your other ideas?

فكرة جيدة ، العديد من المدارس لديها أتوبيسات. ما هى أفكارك الأخرى؟







Helen

Try not to have open fires at home. If it's cold, use the heating. And use renewable energy if you can, like solar power – renewable energy keeps the air clean!

حاول ألا يكون لديك مدفأة مكشوفة فى المنزل. إذا كان الجو باردًا، استخدم جهاز التدفئة. واستخدم الطاقة المتجددة إذا استطعت، مثل الطاقة الشمسية - الطاقة المتجددة تحافظ على نظافة الهواء!

Interviewer

Oh, that's helpful. What about more trees?

أوه ، هذا مفيد. ماذا عن المزيد من الأشجار؟







Helen

Yes, that's an excellent idea. We need to plant trees. Trees clean the air because they use the chemicals for their growth through photosynthesis. They also make cities look pretty and give us shade on a hot day!

نعم ، هذه فكرة ممتازة. نحن بحاجة لزراعة الأشجار. تقوم الأشجار بتنظيف الهواء لأنها تستخدم المواد الكيميائية لنموها من خلال عملية التمثيل الضوئى. كما أنها تجعل المدن تبدو جميلة وتمنحنا الظل فى يوم حار!





• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1 Cities have .... cars.
(a. few – b. little – c. many – d. much)

2 We .... always see the chemicals.
(a. must – b. can – c. mustn't – d. can't)

3 Air pollution is .... for us.
(a. good – b. helpful – c. safe – d. dangerous)

4 When we breathe the polluted air, we feel ....
(a. happy – b. better – c. sick – d. excited)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

5

1 Cars put .... in the air and cause air pollution.
a) chemicals b) water c) solar power d) bikes

2 In Gharbia, farmers used the straw to .... their animals.
a) cover b) cut c) allow d) make

3 We need to use more renewable energy like .... power.
a) gas b) electric c) solar d) chemicals

4 .... cars are excellent because they work with electricity.
a) Gas b) Solar c) Electric d) Fire

5 Ali has .... because of the dirty air.
a) straw b) asthma c) shade d) heating

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



car – renewable – bike – polluted – pollution

Air pollution is dangerous. When we breathe ....(1)............ air, we cough and feel sick. Here are some ideas that can help us stop air ....(2)............ . You can go to school by ....(3)............ or the bus. We can plant more trees and use ....(4)............ energy like solar power.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Air pollution is dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick. Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive their children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near the school. In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have cleaner air. To do that, they stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 In .... parents do not drive their children to school.

a) Cairo b) London c) Shenzhen d) Paris

2 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) chemicals b) children c) schools d) cars

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did farmers in Gharbia want to have?

....

4 How do the children in England go to school?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1

is the air clean in Egypt

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

5

SB

"Air pollution"

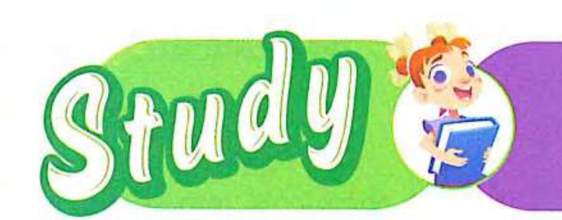
- Is the air dirty or clean in your city?
- Do cars cause air pollution?
- How can we stop it?

....

....

....

....



Writing & Project





Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

energy-saving (adj.)	موفرة للكهرباء	lightbulbs	مصابيح	gas	بنزين
cycle lanes	ممرات للدراجات	traffic	حركة المرور	road signs	إشارات الطريق

Extra vocabulary

report	تقرير	excited (adj.)	متشوق	ideas	أفكار
apartment	شقة	balcony	بلكونة	nearer (adj.)	أقرب
cleaner (adj.)	أنقى	building materials	مواد البناء	main heading	عنوان رئيسي
sub-heading	عنوان فرعي	carbon monoxide	أول أكسيد الكربون	breathing problems	مشاكل التنفس

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
decide	يقرر	decided	increase	يزيد	increased
pollute	يلوث	polluted	reduce	يقلل	reduced
share	يتشارك	shared			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
drive	يقود	drove	burn	يحرق	burnt

Expressions and Phrases

do research	يقوم ببحث	put in	يركِّب شيئًا
car-free roads	طرق خالية من العربيات	from behind	من الخلف





A Writing



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Introduction

Last week I heard Dr Helen Walker talking about air pollution. I liked her ideas and I did some research. I talked to my family about what we can do.

استمعت الأسبوع الماضى إلى الدكتورة هيلين والكر تتحدث عن تلوث الهواء. لقد أحببت أفكارها وقمت ببعض الأبحاث. لقد تحدثت مع عائلتى حول ما يمكننا القيام به.



What we can do

- We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartment. • يمكننا الحصول على مصابيح موفرة للطاقة فى شقتنا.
- We can use buses and trains more. • يمكننا استخدام الأتوبيسات والقطارات أكثر.
- We can share a car with a friend sometimes. • يمكننا مشاركة السيارة مع صديق فى بعض الأحيان.
- We can walk and not always go by car. • يمكننا المشى ولا نذهب بالسيارة دائمًا.
- We can have many plants on our balcony. • يمكن أن يكون لدينا العديد من النباتات فى شرفتنا.

What we decided to do

We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now go to school by bike. My sister, Noura, walks to school.
We have more plants in the living room and on the balcony. When our lightbulbs stop working, we can put in energy-saving lightbulbs. I'm excited!
Youssef

قررنا تغيير بعض الأشياء كعائلة. يذهب أبى الآن للعمل مع صديقه فى نفس السيارة. أمى تستقل الأتوبيس إلى العمل. هى لا تقود. أنا أذهب الآن إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. أختى نورا تمشى إلى المدرسة.
لدينا المزيد من النباتات فى غرفة المعيشة وفى الشرفة. عندما تتوقف مصابيحنا الكهربائية عن العمل، يمكننا وضع مصابيح موفرة للطاقة. أنا متحمس! يوسف.

Check point

1 How does Mom go to work? ....

2 Why does Noura walk to school? ....

More ideas to stop air pollution

المزيد من الأفكار لوقف تلوث الهواء



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Don't burn rice straw.

لا تحرق قش الأرز.

Increase public transportation.

زد من وسائل النقل العام.

Have cleaner gas in your car.

احصل على غاز أنظف في سيارتك.

Use building materials that don't pollute.

استخدم مواد بناء غير ملوثة.

Have some car-free roads.

احصل على بعض الطرق الخالية من السيارات.

Travel on foot or by bike.

انتقل سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجة.

Have cycle lanes at the side of roads.

احصل على ممرات للدراجات على جانب الطريق.





انظر واقرأ:

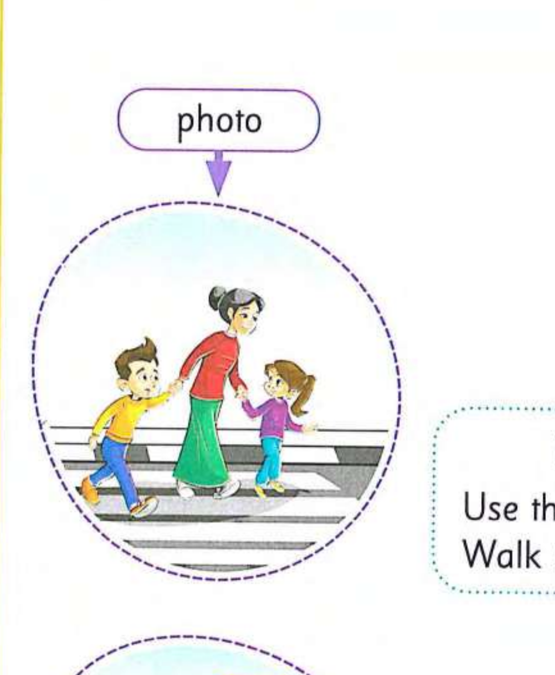
Road safety leaflet

نشرة السلامة على الطرق

ROAD SAFETY

main heading

photo



sub-heading

Be safe on the road كن أمنًا على الطريق

Use the crosswalks. استخدِم ممرات المشاة.

Walk slowly – don't run. امشِ ببطء - لا تجرِ.



Watch the traffic – listen for cars

اتبه لحركة المرور - استمع لأصوات السيارات

Don't cross from behind a car. لا تعبر من خلف السيارة.



Read the road signs اقرأ علامات الطريق

Read the road signs. They give you important information about the road.

اقرأ علامات الطريق. تعطيك العلامات معلومات مهمة عن الطريق.

paragraph

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (6)

1 Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same ....
(a. metro – b. bus – c. car – d. train)

2 Mom .... the bus to work.
(a. takes – b. gives – c. drives – d. rides)

3 I .... to school.
(a. walk – b. run – c. drive – d. cycle)

4 Noura's school is ....
(a. small – b. near – c. far – d. big)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 We can have many .... on our balcony.

a) cars b) trains c) plants d) planes

2 We have energy- saving .... in our apartment.

a) cars b) lightbulbs c) plants d) ovens

3 We can .... a car with a friend sometimes.

a) buy b) burn c) share d) walk

4 Don't .... rice straw to stop air pollution.

a) use b) eat c) burn d) increase



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

share – dangerous – walk – energy-saving – trains

Last week, my teacher was talking about air pollution. She gave us some ideas to stop air pollution. We can have ....(1)............ lightbulbs in our apartments. We can use more buses and ....(2)............ . We can also ....(3)............ a car with a friend sometimes. If you're going to a near place, you can ....(4)............ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

I'm Ola. I read about air pollution. It's very dangerous. We can stop air pollution. My family decided to change some things. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I cycle to school. My brother Ahmed walks to school because his school is nearer. I find many things we can do to stop air pollution. We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartment. We can have many plants on our balcony.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) cars b) Ola's school
c) ideas to stop air pollution d) Ola's brother

2 Ola's family decided to .... some things to stop air pollution.

a) increase b) change c) drive d) burn

B Answer the following questions:

3 How does Ola go to school?

....

4 Why does Ahmed walk to school?

....

5 Punctuate the following: (1)

Don t burn rice straw

....

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Ideas to stop air pollution"

- What can we do to stop air pollution?
- What should we put on our balconies?
- Should we increase public transportation?

....

....

....

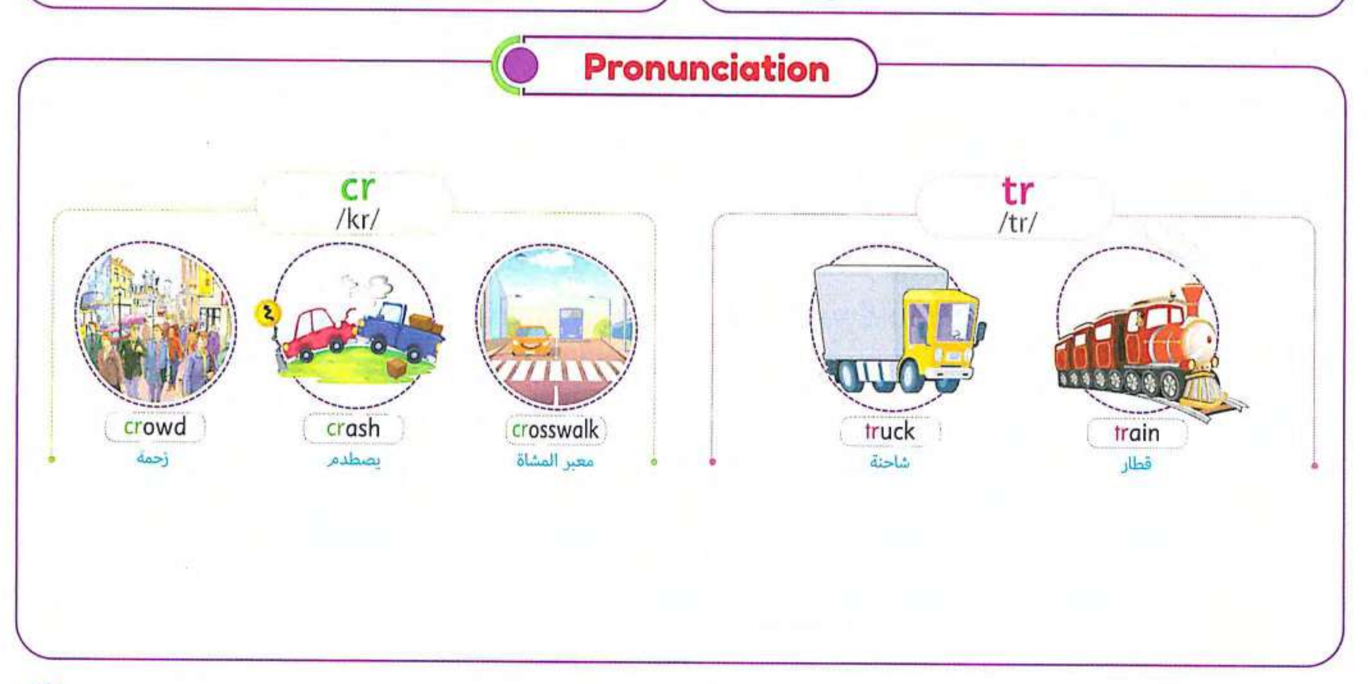
....

Unit 11 REVIEW













Lesson 1

قارب	....	سفينة	....
مترو الأنفاق	....	طائرة	....
مطار	....	سيارة	....
سكة حديد	....	مياه	....
الهواء/الجو	....	الطريق	....

Lesson 2

حزام الأمان	....	آمن	....
خوذة	....	ضوء	....
يسار	....	يمين	....
جمل	....	مستقيم	....
بأمان	....	ينتظر	....

Lesson 3

دراجة بخارية	....	ممر المشاة	....
سيارة إسعاف	....	فى عجلة من أمره	....
مصدوم	....	خائف	....
نظيف	....	شاب صغير السن	....
يصطدم	....	زحمة	....
شاحنة	....	يطفو	....

Lesson 4

مواد كيميائية	....	تلوث	....
خطير	....	أتوبيسات تعمل بالكهرباء	....
ظل	....	الطاقة الشمسية	....
مرض الربو	....	فكرة	....
متجر	....	تدفئة	....
الطاقة المتجددة	....	التمثيل الضوئى	....

تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

WRITING TIME



How to write about transportation:

1. There are many forms of transportation in my town/city.
2. There are + اسم المواصلات that go on + طريقة الانتقال.
3. When we go by + وسيلة المواصلات, we are on + طريقة الانتقال.

There are many forms of transportation types in my city. There are cars and buses that move on roads. When we go by trains or metros, we are on rails. When we go by planes, we go through the air. When we go by boat or ships, we are on water.

How to write about being safe on the road:

1. It's important to be safe on the road.
2. You need + أدوات أمان + in/on + your bike/car.
3. You need + إرشادات عبور الطريق.

It's important to be safe on the road. You need a helmet on your bike. You need a green light to cross the road. You need a seat belt in your car. You need to look right and left before you cross the road. Use the crosswalk and don't cross from behind a car.

How to write ideas to stop air pollution:

1. There are + عوامل تلوث الهواء + and cause air pollution.
2. Air pollution is dangerous because + مخاطر تلوث الهواء.
3. We can + طرق تقليل تلوث الهواء.

There are many cars that put chemicals in the air and cause air pollution. Air pollution is dangerous because when we breathe polluted air, we cough and feel sick. We can share a car with another person. We can walk or cycle to school. We can put more plants on our balconies too.



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box:

taxi – plane – train – boat – car – ship – bus

1 When I travel by ...., I go through the air.

2 When I travel by .... and ...., I am on the water.

3 When I travel by .... and ...., I am on the road.

4 I travel by .... around the city.

5 When I travel to Luxor from Cairo by ...., I move on a rail under the vehicle.

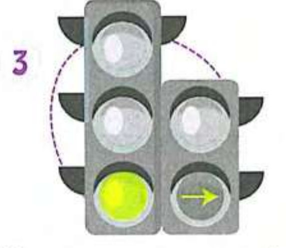
2 Look at the signs and complete:

1 

There are sometimes .... on the road.

2 

You can't .... here.

3 

You can go straight and .... right.

4 

...... here and wait for a green light.

3 Use the notes to make sentences:

1	must listen for cars	We must listen for cars before we cross the road.
2	cross crosswalk	....
3	don't run – roads	....
4	wear seat belt in car	....
5	wear helmet on bike	....
6	follow road signs	....

Test Yourself 30 — UNIT 11





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

1. Some cities are trying to .... air pollution.
   (a. increase – b. help - c. stop - d. do)
2. In London, England, children .... or cycle to school.
   (a. run - b. walk - c. drive - d. jump)
3. In ...., China, they have electric buses that don't pollute the air.
   (a. Shenzhen - b. Cairo - c. England - d. Paris)
4. In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers stopped .... rice straw.
   (a. eating - b. using - c. burning - d. covering)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. You need to use the crosswalk when you .... the road.
   a) drive b) read c) cross d) swim
2. You need to use a .... in your car.
   a) helmet b) seat belt c) crosswalk d) traffic
3. You mustn't cross from behind a car. It's not ....
   a) slow b) safe c) bad d) dangerous
4. Mazen hurt his leg and his sister called for a/an ....
   a) car b) taxi c) ambulance d) bus

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

power – healthy – idea – sick – share

Air pollution is dangerous because when we breathe polluted air, we cough and feel ....(1)............ . We need to stop air pollution. We can drive less or ....(2)............ a car with another person. It's also helpful to use more solar ....(3)............ . Planting more trees is a good ....(4)............ as well.



4 Read the text and then answer the questions:



Nancy lives in a big city with her family. There are many cars where she lives. These cars put chemicals in the air and cause air pollution. Nancy thinks it is dangerous because when people breathe polluted air, they cough and feel sick. Nancy shares some ideas with her family to help stop air pollution. She thinks her dad should share a car with a friend to go to work. Her mom can take the bus to work. And her sister Nada should walk to school because her school is near the house.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about .... pollution.
a) water b) air c) land d) soil

2 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....
a) cars b) chemicals c) people d) ideas

B Answer the following questions:

3 What should Nancy's dad do? ....

4 Why should Nada walk to school? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 4

1 Ramy travels to Alexandria (on) .... train.

2 Salma needs to (wearing) .... a helmet on her bike.

3 You (must) .... run on the roads.

4 You must (listens) .... for cars.

6 Punctuate the following: 1

people have electric buses in china.

....

7 Write a text of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Transportation in my town"

- How do you go to school?
- What's your favorite transportation?
- Do you ever catch the bus or metro?

....

....

....





< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!





Al-AZHAR CORNER



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 Hala needs to be (quick – fast – safe) on the road.

2 Hala needs a helmet on her (car – bike – bus).

3 Hala (cycles – run – walk) at the side of the road.

2 Read and complete the dialog:

late – get – catch – foot

Seleem: How do you .... to school?

Ramy : I come to school on ....

Seleem: Do you ever .... the bus or metro?

Ramy : Only if I'm ....

3 Choose the correct answer:

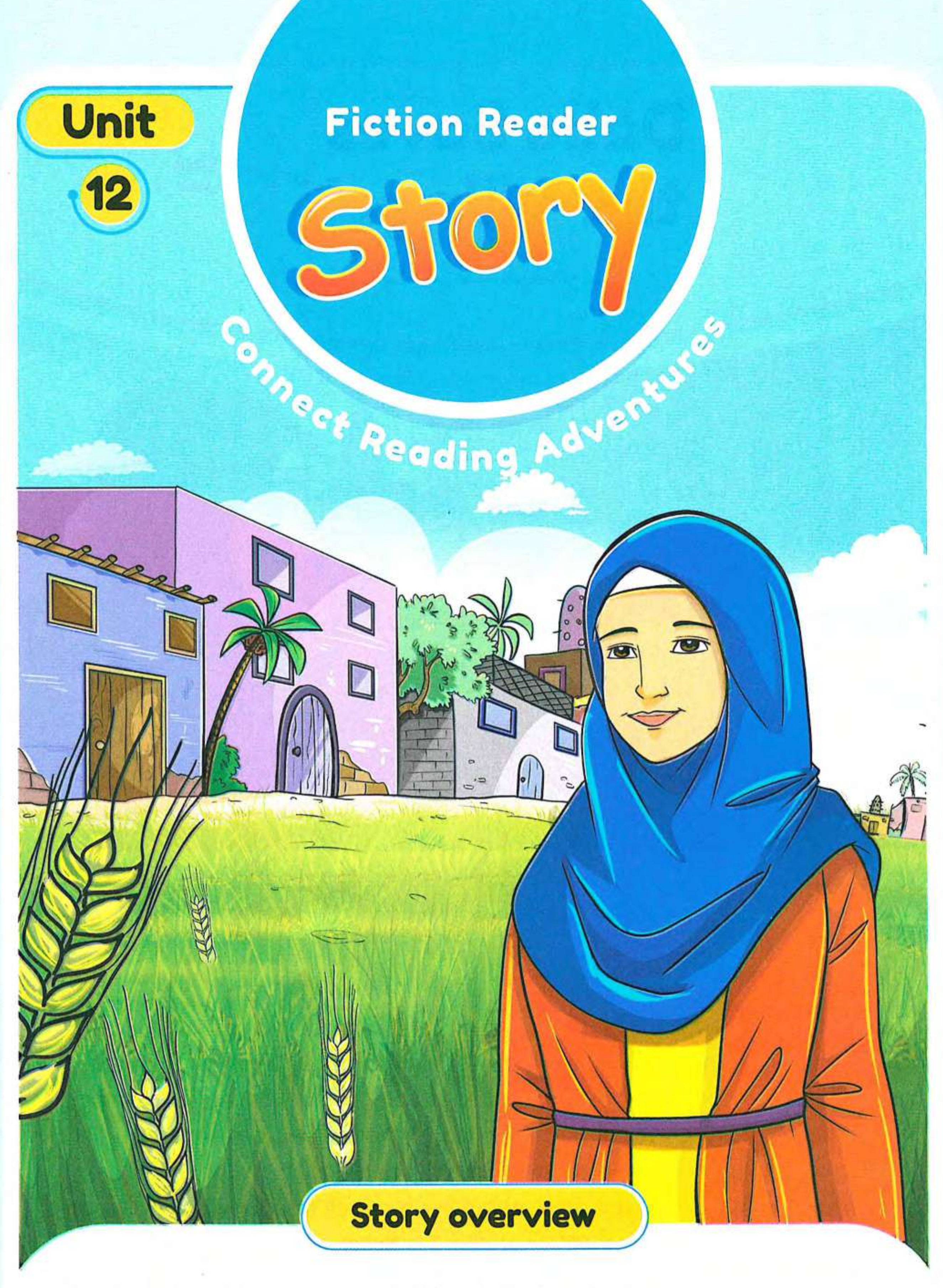
1 Nader was in a (shock – hurry – trip). He ran along the way to work.

2 You (must – mustn't – shouldn't) watch for the traffic lights.

3 I live near the school so I go there (on – by – at) foot.

4 (Stop – Stopped – Stopping) here and wait for the green light.

5 Nahla never travels by (train – bus – ship). She doesn't like traveling on water.



By the end of the story, the student will be able to:

بنهاية القصة سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- read and understand a story.
- enjoy reading in English.
- identify characters in a story.
- identify key events and vocabulary in a story.

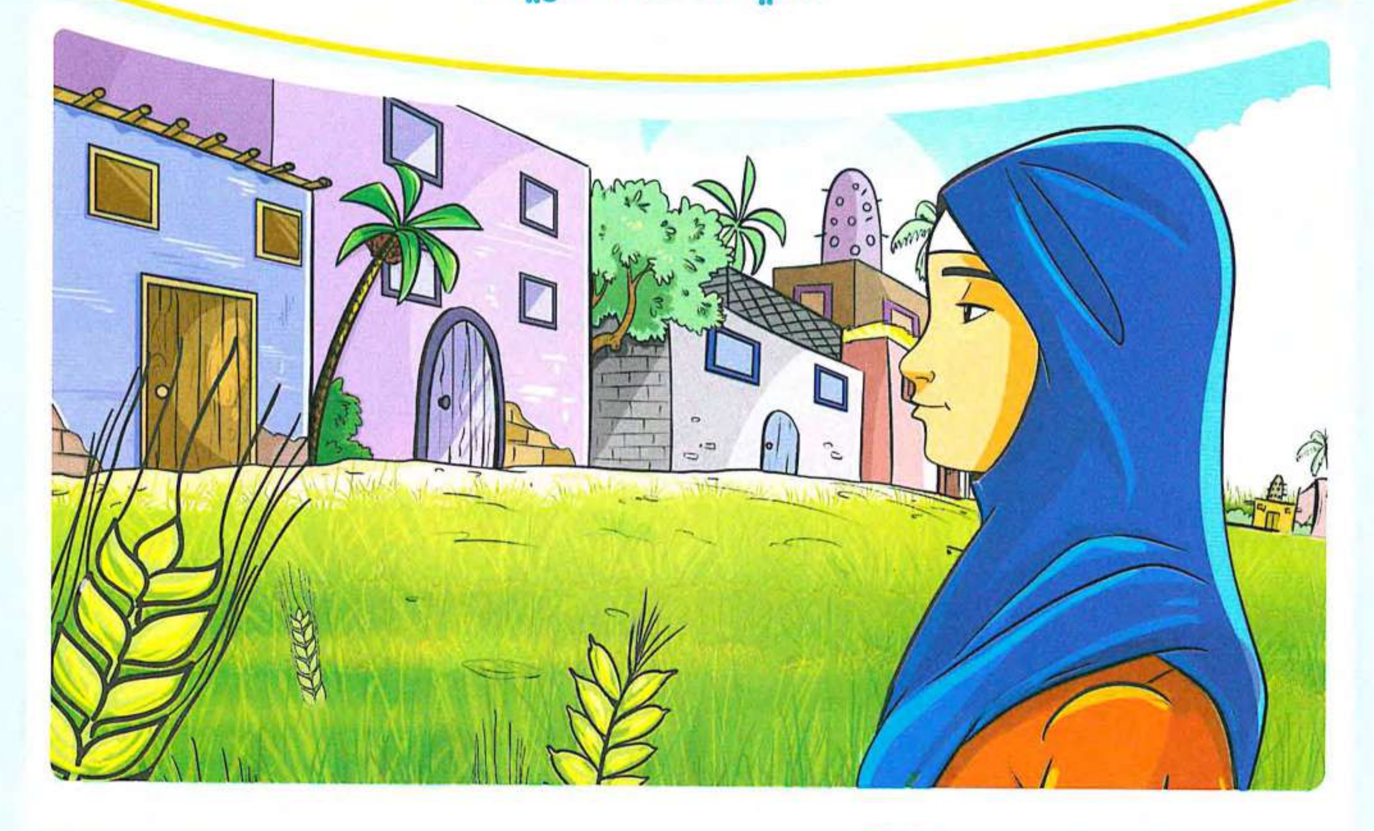
- يقرأ ويفهم قصة.
- يستمتع بالقراءة باللغة الإنجليزية.
- يتعرف على الشخصيات في القصة.
- يتعرف على الأحداث الهامة والكلمات في القصة.

Dalia Saves the Village!



Title
العنوان

داليا تنقذ القرية!



Retold by Nicola Gardner



Author
المؤلف

Warm up

Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. She is doing research about crops in Egypt. The crops aren't growing well in the village. There is a problem with the irrigation canal in the village. Dalia wants to help people in the village. She contacts all the people there on social media asking for help. They decide to help her. They manage to solve the problem together so the villagers can grow crops again. Dalia tells the villagers more about her research to grow different crops. She advises them to grow wheat. Everything is better now in the village. Dalia decides to work with agriculture when she grows up.

تعيش داليا فى قرية فى مصر. تقوم داليا بعمل بحث عن المحاصيل التى تنمو فى مصر. لا تنمو المحاصيل بشكل جيد فى القرية. توجد مشكلة متعلقة بقناة الرى فى القرية. تريد داليا أن تساعد سكان القرية. تتواصل داليا مع سكان القرية عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى لطلب المساعدة، فيقرر أهل القرية مساعدتها. يستطيع الجميع حل المشكلة معًا فيستطيع أهل القرية زراعة المحاصيل مجددًا. تخبر داليا أهل القرية عن بحثها أكثر ليتمكنوا من زراعة محاصيل مختلفة. وتنصحهم داليا بزراعة القمح. كل شىء فى تحسن الآن فى القرية. تقرر داليا أن تتخصص فى مجال الزراعة عندما تكبر.



Story
Dalia Saves the Village!





Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



wheat قمح



crop محصول



irrigation canal قناة الرى



irrigation الرى



wheat flour دقيق قمح



maize ذرة



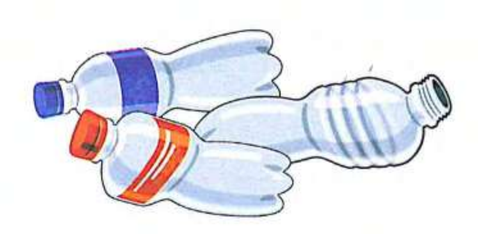
village قرية



baladi bread خبز بلدى (عيش بلدى)



cookies بسكويت (كوكيز)

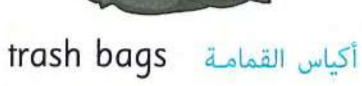


plastic bottles زجاجات بلاستيكية



trash قمامة





trash bags أكياس القمامة

Extra vocabulary

interesting (adj.)	شيق	important (adj.)	مهم
delicious (adj.)	لذيذ (شهى)	well	بشكل جيد
problem	مشكلة	simple (adj.)	بسيط
call (v.)	ينادى/ يتصل	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
get (v.)	يحصل على	meet (v.)	يقابل
main square	الميدان الرئيسى	bike	دراجة
excited (adj.)	متحمس	grandparents	أجداد
give (v.)	يعطى	see (v.)	يفحص/ يعاين
bring (v.)	يوصل/ يحضر	blocked (adj.)	مسدود
household things	أغراض منزلية	deep (adj.)	عميق
fill (v.)	يملأ	polluted (adj.)	ملوثة
land	أرض	sell (v.)	يبيع
a plan	خطة	produce (v.)	ينتج
fields	حقول	Egyptian bread	الخبز المصرى
awesome (adj.)	رائع	changes	تغيرات
proud (adj.)	فخور	grow up (v.)	يكبر
agriculture	الزراعة		

Expressions and Phrases

do homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلى	do research	يقوم بعمل بحث
to like (something) best	يحب (شيئًا) أكثر من أى شىء آخر	get together	يتجمع
in the center	فى وسط	on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام
clear the trash	يزيل (يتخلص من) القمامة	come back	يعود
become easier	يصبح أسهل	in a few years	فى خلال السنوات القليلة
everything is better	كل شىء فى تحسن	walk around	يتجول



B Story Elements



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:



Characters الشخصيات

Main characters
الشخصيات الرئيسية



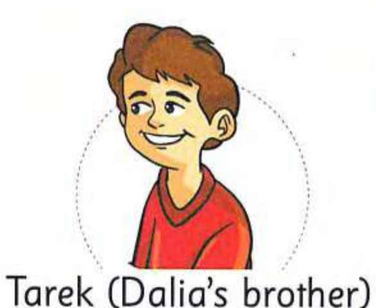
Dalia
داليا



Gameela (Dalia's mom)
جميلة (والدة داليا)



Waleed (Dalia's dad)
وليد (والد داليا)



Tarek (Dalia's brother)
طارق (أخو داليا)



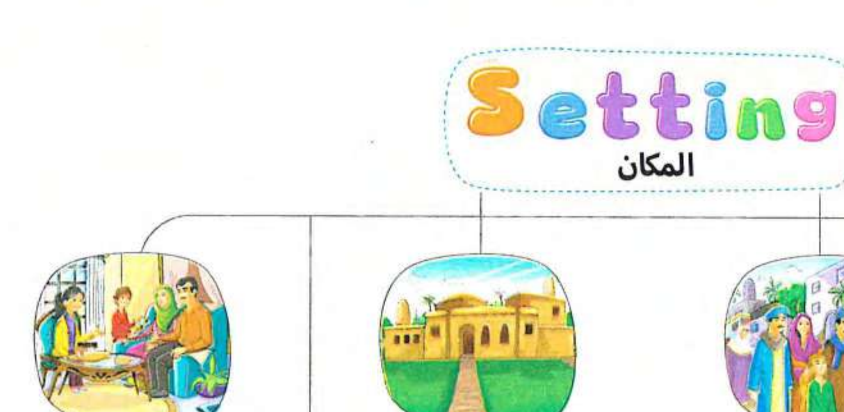
the villagers
أهل القرية



Dalia's grandma
جدة داليا



Dalia's grandpa
جد داليا



Setting
المكان







Dalia's house
منزل داليا

the village
القرية

the main square
الميدان الرئيسى

Dalia's grandparents' house
منزل أجداد داليا





the irrigation canal banks
ضفاف قناة الرى



Grandma's kitchen
مطبخ الجدة



Plot
الحبكة



The Beginning

Dalia discusses the irrigation problem in the village with her family. She wants to help the village. She calls everyone in the village on social media to tell them about the problem.

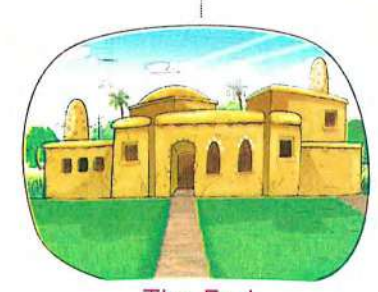
تناقش داليا مشكلة الرى فى القرية مع عائلتها. تريد داليا مساعدة القرية. تتصل داليا بجميع سكان القرية عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى لتخبرهم عن المشكلة.



The Middle

Dalia and her family go to see the problem. The irrigation canal is blocked with trash. The villagers clear the trash. The water is clean now in the canal.

تذهب داليا وعائلتها لمعاينة المشكلة. هناك انسداد فى قناة الرى بسبب القمامة. يزيل أهل القرية القمامة. المياه نظيفة الآن فى القناة.



The End

The water is back to the village. People can grow crops again. They grow more different crops like wheat. Everything is better now in the village.

يعود جريان المياه مرة أخرى إلى القرية. يستطيع أهل القرية زراعة المحاصيل مجددًا. يزرعون أيضًا أنواعًا مختلفة من المحاصيل مثل القمح. كل شىء فى تحسن الآن فى القرية.





استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

The Beginning

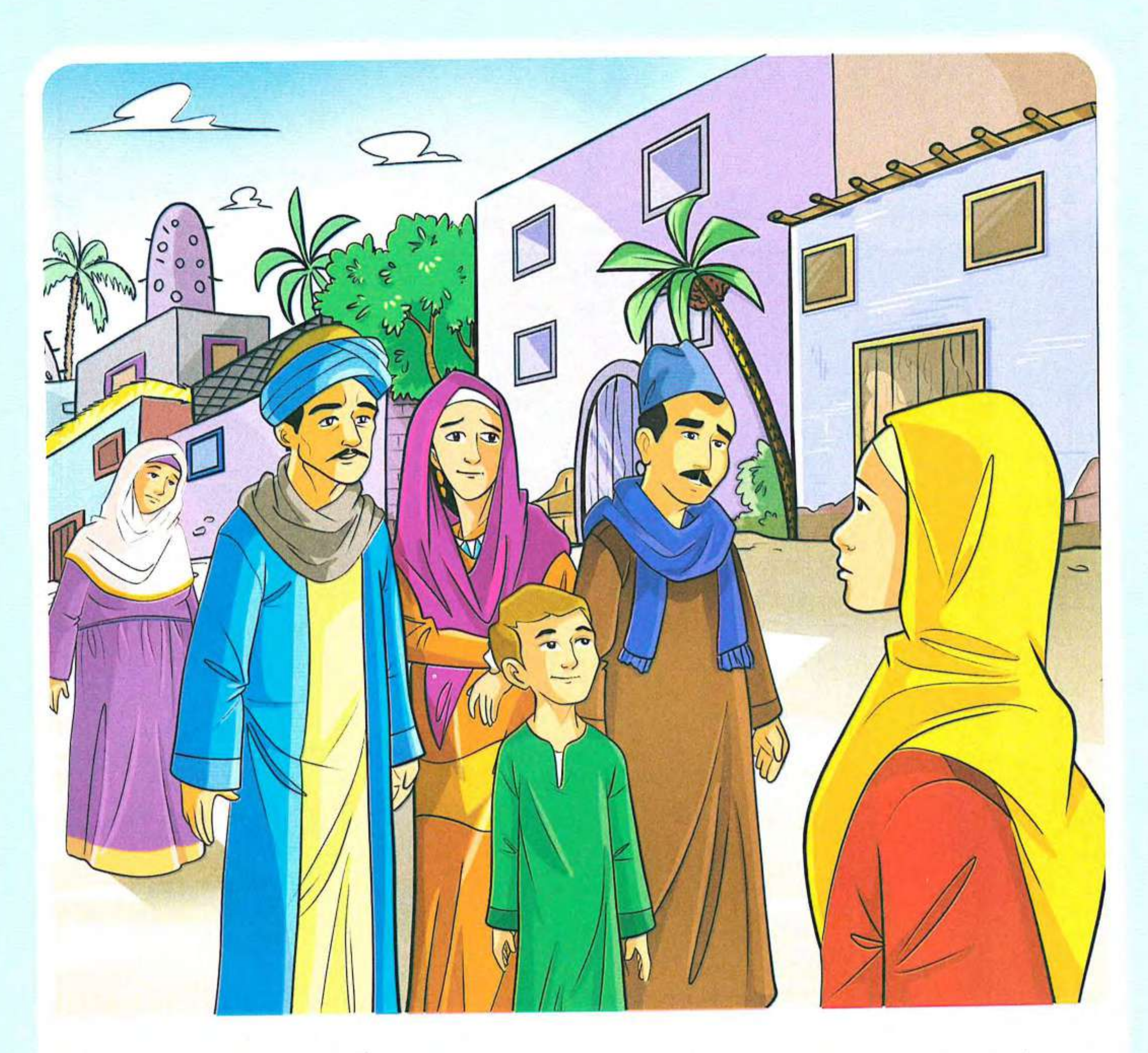
Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. One evening she is doing her homework on her computer. She is doing research about crops in Egypt, like wheat, maize, and rice, and it is very interesting. Wheat is an important crop in our country and we use it to make bread. Dalia looks at the pictures of delicious Egyptian bread. Dalia likes baladi bread best. Which is your favorite?

تعيش داليا فى قرية فى مصر. ذات ليلة، تقوم بعمل واجبها المنزلى على الكمبيوتر. تقوم بعمل بحث عن بعض المحاصيل فى مصر مثل القمح والذرة والأرز، وهذا شيق للغاية. يعتبر القمح محصولًا مهمًا فى بلدنا حيث نستخدمه فى صناعة الخبز. تنظر داليا لصور خبز مصرى شهى. تحب داليا الخبز البلدى أكثر من أى نوع آخر. ما هو النوع المفضل لديك؟



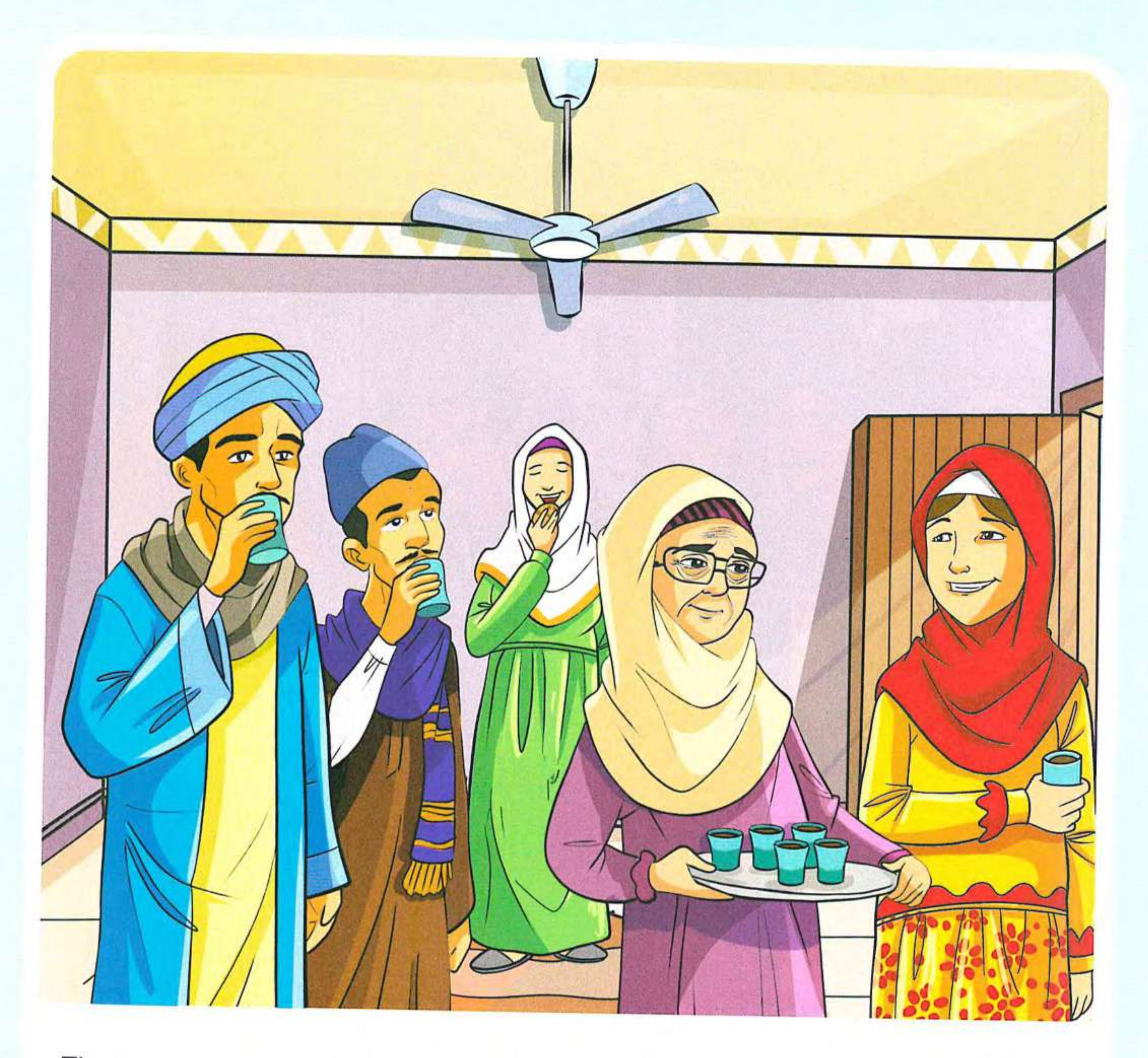
Dalia's mom, Gameela, is speaking to Dalia's dad, Waleed, who looks sad. 'The crops are not growing well in the village. There is a problem with the water and we have no irrigation,' says Gameela to Dalia. 'We need to help everyone in the village with their crops.' Dalia's brother, Tarek, says, 'But what can we do?' Dalia says, 'It's very simple. Let's call everyone in the village on social media. We need to help our village'.

تتحدث جميلة (والدة داليا) إلى وليد (والد داليا) الذى يبدو حزينًا. تقول جميلة لداليا: «لا تنمو المحاصيل بشكل جيد فى القرية. توجد مشكلة متعلقة بالمياه ولا يوجد لدينا رى". «يجب علينا مساعدة كل فرد يمتلك محصولًا فى القرية». يقول طارق أخو داليا: «لكن ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل ؟» تقول داليا: «إنه أمر سهل للغاية. دعنا نتواصل مع كل فرد فى القرية عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى». نحن نحتاج أن نساعد قريتنا.



Dalia's family gets water from the Nile. But the irrigation canal is not working. She tells everyone in the village about this problem on social media, then meets everyone in the main square. A lot of villagers say they can help.

تحصل عائلة داليا على المياه من نهر النيل. لكن قناة الرى لا تعمل. تخبر داليا الجميع فى القرية بهذه المشكلة من خلال وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى ثم تلتقى بالجميع فى الميدان الرئيسى. يقول الكثير من أهل القرية إنهم يمكنهم تقديم المساعدة.

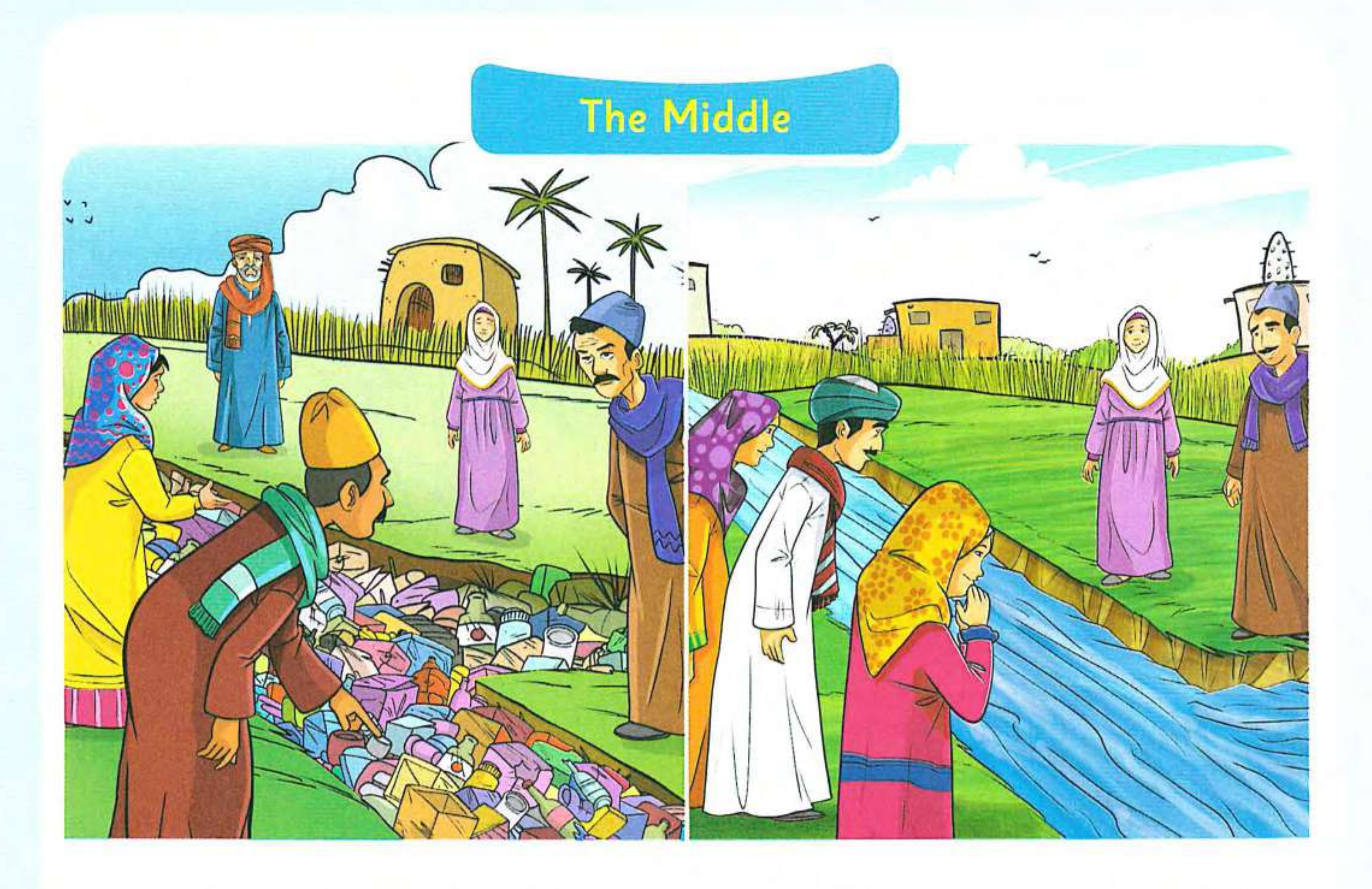


The next day everyone gets together in the center of the village. Some people come on foot, and some by bike. Some people come by boat or by car from another village to help.

Everyone is very excited to help with the problem. They meet at Dalia's grandparents' house. Dalia's grandma gives them tea and cookies.

فى اليوم التالى يجتمع الجميع فى وسط القرية. يأتى بعض الأفراد سيرًا على الأقدام والبعض الآخر باستخدام الدراجة. يأتى بعض الأشخاص بالقارب أو بالسيارة من قرية أخرى ليقدموا المساعدة. الجميع متحمسون لحل المشكلة. يلتقى الجميع فى منزل أجداد داليا. تقدم لهم جدة داليا الشاى والبسكويت (الكوكيز) .

The Middle



Dalia and her family go to see the problem. The irrigation canal that brings the water is blocked with trash – plastic bottles and household things. There are also some plants in the water. Tarek says, 'We need to start work and clean the water.' The water is not very deep and they start to clear the trash. They fill 20 trash bags with the trash. Now the water isn't polluted.

تذهب داليا وعائلتها لمعاينة المشكلة. وجدوا أن قناة الرى التى توصل المياه مسدودة بالقمامة كزجاجات بلاستيكية وأغراض منزلية. كما توجد بعض النباتات فى المياه. يقول طارق «يجب علينا بدء العمل وتنظيف المياه». المياه ليست عميقة للغاية ويبدأ الجميع بإزالة القمامة. يملأ أهل القرية 20 كيس قمامة بالقمامة الموجودة. الآن، المياه غير ملوثة.

The End



The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again. Everyone is very happy. They can grow food on their land and they can sell their fruit and vegetables to buy other things. Their lives become easier. But some of the crops are not very good.

Dalia has a plan. She thinks the villagers can produce more food. She says they should try wheat – she tells them about her research. She says wheat grows very well in Egypt and is great for making delicious bread and cakes.

Some villagers like the idea – they start to grow wheat in some of their fields.

يعود جريان المياه إلى القرية وتنمو المحاصيل مجددًا. الجميع سعداء للغاية. يستطيعون الآن زراعة الغذاء على أرضهم ويستطيعون بيع الفاكهة والخضراوات الخاصة بهم لشراء أشياء أخرى. تصبح حياتهم أسهل. لكن بعض المحاصيل ليست بحال جيدة. لدى داليا خطة. تعتقد أن أهل القرية يمكنهم إنتاج أغذية أكثر. فعليهم تجربة زراعة القمح. تخبرهم داليا عن بحثها. وتقول إن القمح ينمو بشكل جيد جدًّا فى مصر وهو جيد لصناعة خبز لذيذ وكعك. يعجب بعض من أهل القرية بالفكرة. ويبدءون بزراعة القمح فى بعض حقولهم.



From the wheat, they can make flour. From the flour, they can make delicious Egyptian bread. Grandma can make more of her awesome cookies. The villagers make bread and cookies to sell to other villages.

يمكنهم صناعة الدقيق من القمح. من الدقيق يمكنهم صناعة الخبز المصرى الشهى. تستطيع الجدة صنع المزيد من البسكويت (الكوكيز) الرائع الخاص بها. يصنع أهل القرية الخبز والبسكويت (الكوكيز) ليتمكنوا من بيعها إلى القرى الأخرى.



In a few years, everything is better in the village. Dalia walks around the village and sees the changes. She is very proud. When she grows up, she works with agriculture to help other people with their crops.

فى خلال سنوات قليلة، أصبح كل شىء أفضل فى القرية. تتجول داليا حول القرية وتلقى نظرة على التغييرات. هى فخورة جدًا. عندما تكبر ستعمل فى مجال الزراعة لتساعد المزيد من الناس فى زراعة محاصيلهم.

Story Summary

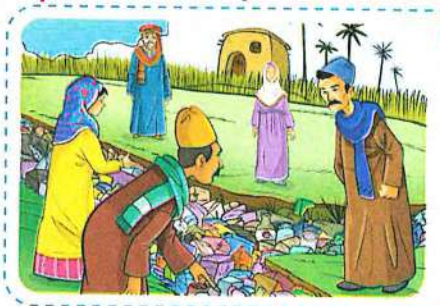


Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

There is a problem in the village where Dalia lives.

توجد مشكلة فى القرية التى تعيش فيها داليا.

The problem المشكلة



What is the problem in the village?

ماهى المشكلة الموجودة فى القرية؟

The crops aren't growing well. There is a problem with the irrigation canal. It's blocked with trash.

لا تنمو المحاصيل بشكل جيد. توجد مشكلة متعلقة بقناة الرى. إنها مسدودة بالقمامة.

The process الطريقة



What does Dalia do? ماذا تفعل داليا؟

Dalia tells everyone in the village about the problem on social media. She meets them in the main square to help with the problem.

تخبر داليا جميع أهل القرية عن المشكلة عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. تقابل داليا أهل القرية فى الميدان الرئيسى لحل المشكلة .

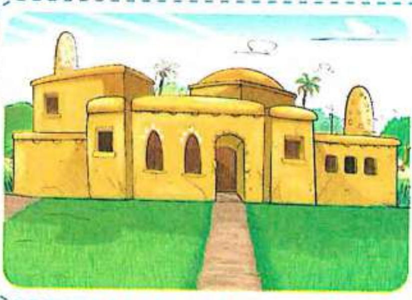


What do the villagers do? ماذا يفعل أهل القرية؟

The villagers clear the trash. They fill 20 trash bags with trash.

يزيل أهل القرية القمامة. يقومون بملء 20 كيسًا من أكياس القمامة بالقمامة الموجودة.

The solution/conclusion الحل (نهاية المشكلة)



What is the result? ما هى النتيجة؟

The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again.

يعود جريان المياه مرة أخرى الى القرية وتنمو المحاصيل مجددًا.



Story

GENERAL PRACTICE

1 Unscramble and write:

أعد الترتيب واكتب:

1	2	3	4
			
rrigitiano	eawth	oprc	heatw loufr
....	....	....	....

2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

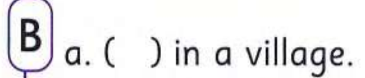
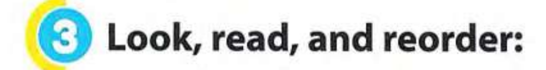


A

1 Dalia meets the villagers ...
2 The villagers ...
3 Dalia's grandma gives the villagers ...
4 Dalia and her family live ...

B

a. ( ) in a village.
b. ( ) in the main square.
c. ( ) clean the canal with the others. SB
d. ( ) tea and cookies.

3 Look, read, and reorder:

انظر، اقرأ وأعد الترتيب:


A lot of villagers say they can help Dalia.


The villagers clear the trash.


Dalia calls everyone in the village on social media.


The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again.

4 Look, read, and answer:

انظر، اقرأ ثم أجب:

Dalia has a plan. She thinks the villagers can produce more food. She says they should try wheat – she tells them about her research. She says wheat grows very well in Egypt and is great for making delicious bread and cakes.



1 Circle the characters you can see.

A Gameela B Tarek C Dalia

2 What is Dalia's plan?

....

3 Can we make bread from wheat?

....

5 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences:

اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1 bread – likes – Dalia – baladi.

....

2 blocked – The canal – with – is – trash.

....

3 excited – with – help – Everyone – is – to – the problem.

....

4 in – a village – lives – Dalia – in Egypt.

....

6 Read and answer the following questions:

اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1 How can Dalia call everyone in the village?

....

2 What is Dalia's research about?

....

3 How many trash bags do the villagers fill?

....

4 What is the problem in the village?

....

TAPE SCRIPTS



UNIT 7

Practice on Lesson 1

The Nile River is the longest River in the world. It is 6,670 kilometers long. It brings life to the whole of Egypt. It is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles. The Nile has two branches in Egypt.

Practice on Lesson 2

Grandpa lived in a small village when he was young. The village was near the river. It was very quiet when he lived there. He played football on the street with his friends. There were no cars or trucks then.

Practice on Lesson 3

The city mouse visited the country mouse last week. The country mouse was pleased and excited. He gave him grass and seeds. The city mouse invited him to come with him to the city. The country mouse agreed. They took the train there!

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

I am doing a history project in my school about my town. I looked at old photos and talked to my neighbors to find many information. My friend said that his grandparents used to drove gas cars and they were very noisy.

Test Yourself on Unit 7

The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It's like traveling to the center of the Earth. It has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is home to different kinds of fish, birds, and animals. It brings life to the whole of Egypt.

Al-Azhar Corner

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It has two branches in Egypt. It brings life to the whole of Egypt.

UNIT 8

Practice on Lesson 1

Yesterday, we had a party. We went to the supermarket and bought many things for the party. We bought five packets of cookies. We bought six cartons of orange juice. We bought four packets of candies. We also bought ten slices of pizza.

Practice on Lesson 2

Last weekend, we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too! Grandpa caught a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish! We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert.

Practice on Lesson 3

Eid Al-Fitr is my favorite Muslim festival. Eid comes after the month of Ramadan. We eat kahk. Kahk are delicious cookies. We go to the mosque and we spend time with our family. We also eat delicious food.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandpa was 90 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I also ate some salad and fruit.

Test Yourself on Unit 8

Last Monday we went to Alexandria to see my grandparents who live by the sea. We swam in the water. It was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish and my grandpa caught a big fish, too. Grandma made the fish into a lovely dish.

Al-Azhar Corner

Last weekend, we visited our grandparents who live by the sea. We swam in the sea. We saw lots of fish in the water which was deep and blue.

UNIT 9

Practice on Lesson 1

To play "Pass the parcel", you need a present, music, and lots of paper. First, wrap a small present and cover it with lots of paper. The players sit in a circle and pass the present as the music plays.

Practice on Lesson 3

Egypt is a big country that is famous for its history. We often celebrate its rich culture. There are many things that can make us special. Our food can be described as wonderful. Egyptian people are friendly and hospitable. More than half of the Egyptians are under the age of 30.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

Dear Heba,

I'm inviting you to come to my sister's birthday party next Monday. The whole class will be there. We can play some party games and sing songs, so bring some music so we can play Musical chairs. The party will be in my house. Hope you can come.

Yours, Dalia

Test Yourself on Unit 9

To play Pass the parcel, wrap a small present and cover it with lots of paper. Players sit in a circle. Play some music. Players give the present to the next person as the music plays. When the music stops, the player holding the present unwraps one piece of paper and so on.

Al-Azhar Corner

Marwa was at La Tomatina festival last Month. It takes place in Spain. She had a lot of fun and everything was red.

UNIT 10

Practice on Lesson 1

Dalia is in grade four. She is doing her homework about chameleons. Dalia thinks that chameleons are interesting because they can change color as the place where they are. She logged into the school library and created a password to get information.

Practice on Lesson 2

My cousin Adam is 13 years old. He has an account on social media. He likes to share ideas, thoughts, and information with other people. Adam is always careful when he is online. He accepts to be a friend only with people he knows.

Practice on Lesson 3

Playing computer games for too much time isn't healthy for children. They don't have enough time to do homework or play outside. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should do other things like playing sports.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

In some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family. I also like computer games where I go outside. We like these games because you find a prize at the end.

Test Yourself on Unit 10

It's important to be safe online. You should have strong passwords. You should also be friends only with people you know. It's also important to keep your passwords and personal information secret. Don't bully and don't be a bully.

Al-Azhar Corner

Dalia is doing homework about chameleons. She thinks they are amazing because they can change color.

UNIT 11

Practice on Lesson 2

It's important to be safe on the road. You need a helmet on your bike. You need a seat belt in your car. You need the green light to cross the road. You need to look right and left before you cross the road.

Practice on Lesson 3

Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. They love their school. The teachers are very kind. Mazen and Dalida go to school together. They always cross the road on the crosswalk and wait for the cars to stop. They never cross the road until the light is green.

Practice on Lesson 4

Cities have many cars. Cars cause air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Air pollution is dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.

Practice on Lessons 5 & 6

To stop air pollution, my family decided to change some things. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I cycle to school. My sister Noura walks to school because her school is nearer.

Test Yourself on Unit 11

Some cities are trying to stop air pollution. In London, England, children walk or cycle to school. In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses that don't pollute the air. In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers stopped burning rice straw.

Al-Azhar Corner

Hala needs to be safe on the road. She needs a helmet on her bike. She only cycles at the side of the road.



Contents





Unit 7

Vocabulary

elevator	مصعد	closet	خزانة
cushion	وسادة	oven	فرن
balcony	بلكونة	armchair	كرسى ذو ذراعين
television	تلفاز	shower	دش
bed	سرير	bedroom	غرفة النوم
living room	غرفة المعيشة	kitchen	مطبخ
bathroom	حمام	mud bricks	الطوب اللبن
gate	بوابة	oven	فرن
pot	إناء (حلة)	roof	سطح
reed mat	حصيرة مصنوعة من القصب	sleeping area	منطقة للنوم
farmhouse	بيت ريفى	landscape	منظر طبيعى
blog	مدونة	ecological (adj.)	بيئى

Pronunciation

ee /iː/

three	ثلاثة	keep	يحافظ على	cheese	جبن	tree	شجرة
sheep	خروف	seed	بذرة	queen	ملكة		

oo /uː/

school	مدرسة	tool	أداة	spoon	ملعقة	roof	سطح	pool	حمام سباحة
smooth	ناعم	zoo	حديقة حيوان	food	طعام	noon	وقت الظهيرة		

oo /ʊ/

book	كتاب	cook	طباخ	wood	خشب	good	جيد	wool	صوف

oo /ʌ/

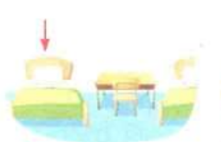
flood	فيضان	blood	دم

Language Focus

1. Telling where things are:



On the right, ...



On the left, ...



In the middle ... .



On the wall, ...

2. The prefix "un" :

The prefix "un-" means "not"

unfriendly	uncomfortable	unlucky	unsafe	unhappy	unfair
غير ودود	غير مريح	غير محظوظ	غير آمن	غير سعيد	غير عادل

The Past Simple Tense

Usage:

Something that happened once:
e.g. I visited her house when I was five.

Something that happened several times in the past:
e.g. We went to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

Something that was true for some time in the past:
e.g. He loved living in his grandmother's apartment as a child.

Expressions with "ago":
e.g. I met her in Zagazig two years ago.

Affirmative sentence:

1. Regular Verbs

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed): want → wanted
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d): die → died
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y) يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ied). carry → carried
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن. stop → stopped

2. Irregular Verbs

Present		Past	Present		Past
come	يأتي	came	eat	يأكل	ate
go	يذهب	went	know	يعرف	knew
meet	يقابل	met	tell	يخبر	told
set	يجهز	set	am / is	يكون (للمفرد)	was
are	يكون (للجمع)	were	do	يفعل	did

Negative sentence:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل... .



I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question.

Yes/No question:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل...?

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.

A: Did you travel all over Egypt?
B: Yes, I did.

Wh-question:

A: Question word	did	subject	(inf.) مصدر الفعل...?
B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل ...			

A: When did it rain?
B: It rained yesterday.

Key words:

yesterday أمس – last الماضي – ago منذ – in the past في الماضي – when عندما

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
move	....	share	....
....	painted	relax	....
store	....	blow	
come	....	eat	....
....	went	....	knew
meet	....	tell	....
set	....	....	were



Exercises on Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

A

1 I watch .... with my family.
a) oven b) elevator c) shower d) television

2 In Ancient Egypt, people made their homes near the ....
a) farm b) park c) Nile d) sleeping area

3 We use .... to go up and down floors.
a) elevators b) TV c) closets d) ovens

4 I have traditional .... in my living room.
a) ovens b) cushions c) closets d) spaces

B

1 Ancient Egyptians covered the windows with .... to keep insects outside.
a) pots b) mats c) roofs d) papyrus

2 There's a big .... in the kitchen.
a) bed b) oven c) cushion d) elevator

3 My mom is a/an .... She takes me to see brilliant places.
a) vet b) doctor c) architect d) nurse

4 There's an .... house in the Netherlands. It's upside down.
a) unhappy b) unusual c) unlucky d) unsafe

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

flat – mats – mud – walls – white

Ancient Egyptians used the Nile's water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used ....(1).......... from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong ....(2).......... . Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. So, some people painted their homes ....(3).......... to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had ....(4).......... roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.

B old – unusual – farms – modern – online

Hi! My name's Dalida, and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about ....(1).......... homes. I found this unusual house in the Netherlands ....(2).......... – it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it ....(3).......... . The house fits in very well with the local landscape, which is ....(4).......... and fields.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

A

1 grew – Ancient Egyptians – kept – and – chickens – vegetables.

....

2 last – Did – pizza – Monday – you – eat?

....

3 a closet – On – there – left, – the – is.

....

4 cushions – gift – a – from – were – These – Grandma.

....

B

1 did – juice – When – drink – you?

....

2 not – someone – "Unfriendly" – to – kind – means.

....

3 many – Not – people – or – beds – chairs – had.

....

4 about – homes – This week – unusual – writing – I'm.

....

Unit 8

Vocabulary

earache	ألم الأذن	toothache	ألم الأسنان	cold	أنفلونزا (برد)
cough	كحة	sore throat	التهاب الحلق	backache	ألم بالظهر
headache	صداع	ankle	كاحل	back	ظهر
shoulder	كتف	coach	كابتن/ مدرب	stomach	معدة
patients	مرضى	unwell (adj.)	مريض	relatives	أقارب
crowded (adj.)	مزدحم	busy (adj.)	مشغول	staff	طاقم العمل
perhaps	ربما	treatment	علاج	injuries	إصابات
illnesses	أمراض	wounds	جروح	recently	حديثا (مؤخرًا)
bacteria	بكتيريا	substance	مادة	huge (adj.)	ضخم

Pronunciation

/f/

frog	ضفدع	scarf	وشاح/ كوفية	fruit	فاكهة
ferry	معدية	few	قليل	safe	آمن
life	حياة	fan	مروحة	leaf	ورقة شجر
friends	أصدقاء	fast	سريع	fine	جيد

/v/

vet	طبيب بيطري	vegetables	خضروات	television	تلفاز
van	شاحنة صغيرة	leave	يغادر	live	حي/ يعيش
very	جدا	view	منظر	save	يوفر
lovely	جميل				

Language Focus

We use "have" to talk about illnesses:

Affirmative sentence:

I/ You/ We/ They / اسم جمع + have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).

e.g.



I have a headache.

He/ She/ It / اسم مفرد + has + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).

e.g.



Hana has a cold.

Negative sentence:

I/ You/ We/ They / اسم جمع	don't	have + a/an + illness (اسم المرض).
He/ She/ It / اسم مفرد	doesn't	

e.g.



I don't have a sore throat. I have a backache.

Yes/ No question:

A. Do/Does + subject + have + a/an + illness?

B: Yes,	subject	do/does.
B: No,		don't/doesn't.

e.g.



A: Does she have a toothache?
B: No, she doesn't.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
stay	....	....	hoped
hurt	....	....	thought
....	felt	tell	....
enjoy	....	....	knew
cut	....	....	treated
heal	....	....	contained
....	mixed	damage	....

Exercises on Unit 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

A

1 Sama has a .... She needs to go to the dentist.
a) earache b) toothache c) headache d) backache

2 Aziz has some milk and honey for his ....
a) headache b) stomachache c) earache d) cough

3 I drink .... and lemon when I have a sore throat.
a) cola b) pills c) honey d) ice cream

4 It's very cold outside. Take your ....
a) fan b) scarf c) swimsuit d) T-shirt

B

1 He didn't take his cat to the vet. He's ....
a) irresponsible b) immoral c) illegal d) impossible

2 People use .... if they have a cut knee.
a) toys b) pills c) sunscreen d) bandages

3 Honey is used as a/an ....for thousands of years.
a) wound b) treatment c) bacteria d) illness

4 When someone is ill, he/she is ....
a) fit b) well c) unwell d) relative

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

A

doctor – cough – friends – earache – ankle

Fares didn't have a good day at the club yesterday. Five of his ....(1).......... didn't come to the club. His friend Tarek hurt his ....(2).......... at a football practice last night. And Amr has an ....(3).......... from swimming. Ola has a toothache, and she needs to go to the dentist. Amira has ....(4).......... and sore throat.

B

normal – sick – patients – staff – crowded

In a hospital in Bangalore, there are many patients. The hospital treats ....(1).......... from all over the country. In India, it is unusual for a ....(2).......... person to go to the hospital alone. This means that the hospital is often very ....(3).......... and busy. The ....(4).......... at this hospital do something special. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person.

3 Reorder the words to make sentences:

A

1 have – you – stomachache – Do – a?
....

2 a treatment – Honey – as – used – is.
....

3 He – a toothache. – has – His – hurt – teeth.
....

4 often – The – crowded – hospital – is – busy – and.
....

B

1 don't – They – a cold – have.
....

2 to eat – It's – healthy – like – foods – fruits.
....

3 have – Does – an earache – she?
....

4 good – healing – Honey – for – wounds – is.
....

Unit 9

Vocabulary

kangaroo	الكنغر	panda	باندا
bat	خفاش	lion	أسد
penguin	بطريق	dolphin	دولفين
snail	حلزون	parrot	ببغاء
wildlife	الحياة البرية	shell	صدفة
Australia	أستراليا	rainforest	الغابة الاستوائية
Africa	إفريقيا	strong (adj.)	قوى
ocean	محيط	China	الصين
bamboo	نبات الخيزران	wonderful (adj.)	رائع
awesome (adj.)	رائع	pouch	جراب
fridge	ثلاجة	nuts	فول سودانى
exhausted (adj.)	مرهق	travelers	مسافرون
dictionary	قاموس	fable	أسطورة
wide (adj.)	واسع / عريض	shelter	ملجأ
rest	راحة	traders	تجار
shade	ظل	humans	البشر
breeze	نسيم	useless (adj.)	غير مفيد
ungrateful (adj.)	جاحد (غير شكور)	meeting point	نقطة التقاء
dugong	الأطوم	sea cow	بقرة البحر
nickname	لقب	sea bed	قاع البحر
email	رسالة الكترونية	habitat	مكان معيشة
warm (adj.)	دافئ	eagles	نسور
wolves	ذئاب	cool (adj.)	بارد

Language Focus

Expressing ability and inability:

1 can / can't

When we talk about something we are or aren't able to do in the present, we use (can) or (can't).



Form

Subject + can/can't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ... .

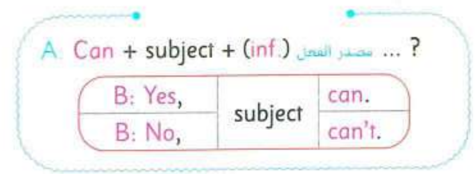
e.g.



I can play basketball.

Question

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Can).



e.g.



A: Can you play tennis?
B: Yes, I can.

2 could / couldn't

When we talk about something we were or weren't able to do in the past, we use (could) or (couldn't).



Form

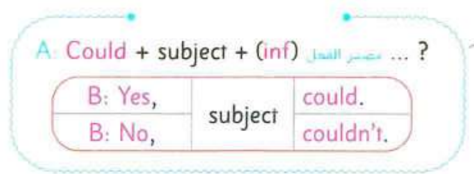
e.g.



When I was little, I could sit on my dad's knee.

Question

To make questions, we change the order of the words (to start with Could).



e.g.



A: Could he speak when he was six months old?
B: Yes, he could say "mama" and "dada!".

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
repeat	....	....	sat
feed	....	....	could
....	hid	....	woke up
feel	....	check	....
....	let	rest	....



Exercises on Unit 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

A

1 .... live in Australia and jump on two legs.
a) Bats b) Dolphins c) Kangaroos d) Lions

2 .... can't fly, but they can swim.
a) Penguins b) Snails c) Pandas d) Lions

3 A .... is where people meet.
a) trunk b) breeze c) meeting point d) nut

4 Mona reads lots of books. She is an active ....
a) teacher b) reader c) traveler d) climber

B

1 .... are birds that have colorful feathers.
a) Penguins b) Parrots c) Bats d) Pandas

2 Salma is tired after the long trip. She's ....
a) annoyed b) interested c) amazed d) exhausted

3 .... live in China and eat bamboo.
a) Parrots b) Snails c) Kangaroos d) Pandas

4 Nour travels to many places. She's a great ....
a) traveler b) reader c) farmer d) climber

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

A

bats – penguin – pouch – animals – jump

Sara and her friends went to the wildlife park last weekend. They saw many amazing ....(1)........ . Sara thinks kangaroos are amazing. They can ....(2)........ on two legs. When they are little, they can sit in their mom's ....(3)........ . She saw many birds, too. Her favorite bird is the ....(4)........ . It's black and white and looks funny.

B bed – dugong – world – dog – cow

This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the ....(1).......... and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the ....(2).......... . I think it's got a lovely friendly face. Its nickname is the sea ....(3).......... and it spends many hours eating from the sea ....(4).......... every day.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

A
1 he – ride – Can – bike – a?
....
2 sleep – Bats – down – upside – trees – on.
....
3 wildlife – went – the – I – to – park.
....
4 have – legs – Snails – or – arms – don't.
....

B
1 black – Pandas – and – white – are.
....
2 run – Could – when – you – little – were – you?
....
3 favorite – unusual – What's – your – animal?
....
4 under – tree – the – travelers – The – rested.
....

Unit 10

Vocabulary

bank	بنك	factory	مصنع
monument	أثر	library	مكتبة
shopping mall	مول تجارى	square	ميدان
station	محطة	stores	متاجر (محلات)
markets	أسواق	roof garden	حديقة السطح
mint tea	شاى بالنعناع	cuisine	مأكولات
traditional (adj.)	تقليدى	ingredients	مكونات
originally	في الأصل	Barcelona	برشلونة
mix	مزيج	culture	ثقافة
traditions	عادات	villager	قروى
ibis	طائر أبو منجل	jerboa	الجربوع
sack	شوال	lost (adj.)	تائه/ مفقود
strange-looking (adj.)	غريب المنظر	crowds	الجماهير
creature	مخلوق	rudely	بطريقة وقحة
foolish (adj.)	أحمق (غبى)	stranger	غريب

Pronunciation

/əʊ/

go	يذهب	show	يعرض	below	أسفل
grow	يزرع	wrote	كتب		

/aɪ/

bite	قضمة/ عضة	right	يمين	time	وقت
bike	دراجة	write	يكتب		

/ɔɪ/

boy	ولد	toy	لعبة	coin	عملة
enjoy	يستمتع	point	يشير إلى		

/eɪ/

make	يصنع	play	يلعب	ache	ألم
eight	ثمانية	bake	يخبز		

Language Focus

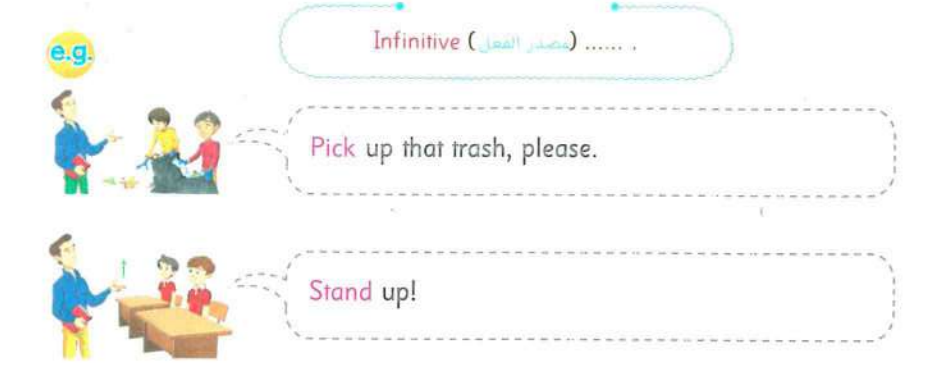
Imperatives

- We use "imperatives" to tell someone to do or not to do something.
- Imperatives don't usually begin with a subject like "you, she or they". Imperatives usually start with a verb.

Affirmative imperatives:

Use the "infinitive" without "to":

e.g. Infinitive (مصدر الفعل) ....



Pick up that trash, please.

Stand up!

Negative imperatives:

Use "Don't + infinitive" without "to":

e.g. Don't + infinitive (مصدر الفعل) ....



Don't eat in the library, please.

Don't talk loudly, please.



Asking about and giving directions:

When we ask about directions, we say:

- Excuse me, how do I get to + place (المكان)?
- Where is the + place (المكان), please?
- Is there + a/an place (مكان) + near here?

We use the imperative to give instructions:
Go straight. / Cross the road. / Turn right/left.

e.g.

Excuse me, how do I get to the library, please?



Go straight, turn right. It's on your left.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
own	....	....	served
....	reminded	think	....
sit	....	....	bought
recognize	....	pretend	....
....	entertained	give	....
....	began	....	chatted

Exercises on Unit 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

A

1 You'll see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum in ....

a) Cairo b) London c) Luxor d) Paris

2 Let's meet at the .... where we can buy some clothes.

a) square b) factory c) shopping mall d) library

3 There are many tourist .... in New Alamein.

a) treasures b) attractions c) centers d) history

4 New Alamein is a city on the ....

a) beach b) Nile c) lake d) river

B

1 Alexandria is a really .... place to visit.

a) bad b) awful c) exciting d) terrible

2 Gabi didn't recognize the road. He was ....

a) fine b) lost c) happy d) good

3 I like to drink sweet .... mint tea.

a) Egyptian b) English c) Chinese d) French

4 Hala went to the .... to take the train to Luxor.

a) library b) station c) monument d) bank

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

A

shopping – restaurants – beach – park – Library

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There are amazing ....(1).........., stores, markets, and museums. There's even a ....(2).......... that you can enjoy on hot days! There are many good museums and the Alexandria ....(3).........., too. There are excellent supermarkets and ....(4).......... malls. You can spend ages walking around them all day.

B

picnics – waterpark – station – market – park

It is really hot in our town. So there is a ....(1).......... that is always open. It's free to go in! There is a wonderful ....(2).......... that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables. There is a big ....(3).......... with lots of trees. People can have family ....(4).......... in the shade there.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

A

1 a really – Alexandria – to visit – is – exciting – place.

....

2 book, – please – Pick – that – up.

....

3 station, – Where – is – please – the?

....

4 from – Alexandria – visiting – Germany – I'm.

....

B

1 Don't – the classroom, – please – play – in.

....

2 a market – here – Is – near – there?

....

3 is – long – New Alamein's – 14 kms – beach.

....

4 get – station – How – I – to – do – the?

....

Unit 11

Vocabulary

ticket	تذكرة	suitcase	حقيبة سفر	hotel	فندق
tourist	سائح	passport	جواز سفر	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
trip	رحلة	husband	زوج	business	عمل
vacation	إجازة	India	الهند	Singapore	سنغافورة
floor	دور	flight	رحلة جوية	bay	خليج
theme park	مدينة الملاهي	Japan	اليابان	airport	المطار
Amman Citadel	قلعة عمان	Roman Amphitheater	المدرج الروماني	Archaeological Museum	المتحف الأثري
Dead Sea	البحر الميت	Zambia	زامبيا	leaflet	منشور
Jordan	الأردن	tour	جولة	local (adj.)	محلي
ancient (adj.)	قديم	crafts	مصنوعات	mud	طين
diary	مذكرات يومية	handicrafts	أعمال يدوية	stalls	أكشاك
rug	سجادة صغيرة	tour guide	مرشد سياحي	away	بعيدًا
possible (adj.)	ممكن	picnic	نزهة	bench	مقعد

Pronunciation

/θ/

thing	شيء	Thursday	يوم الخميس	think	يعتقد
three	ثلاثة	Earth	كوكب الأرض	author	مؤلف
bathroom	حمام	south	جنوب	birthday	عيد ميلاد
thousand	ألف	mouth	فم		

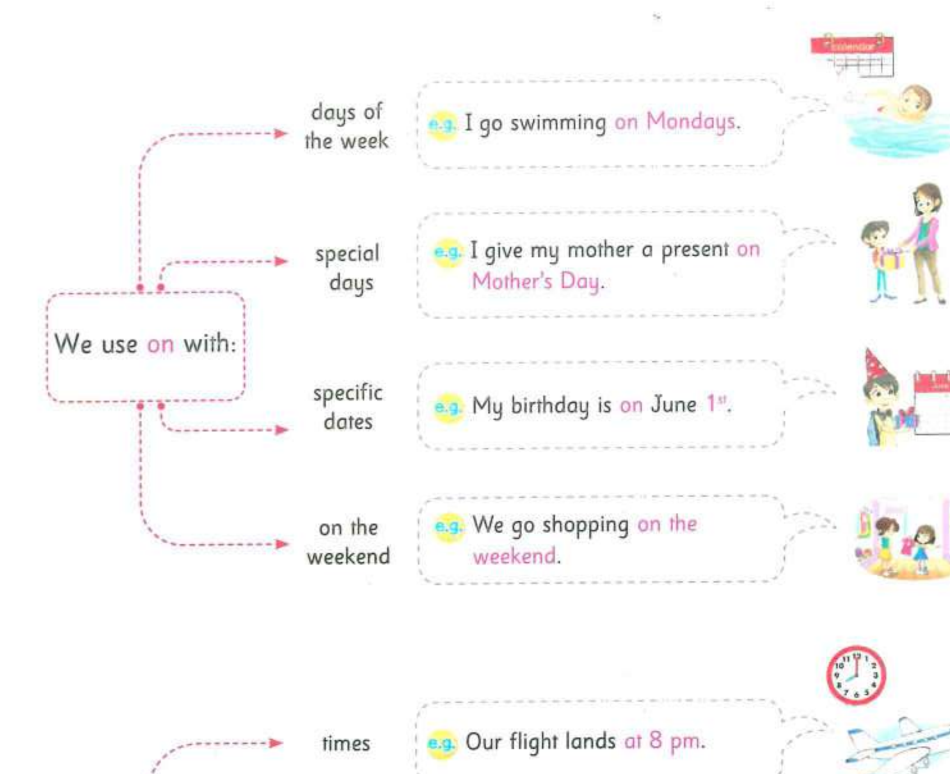
/ð/

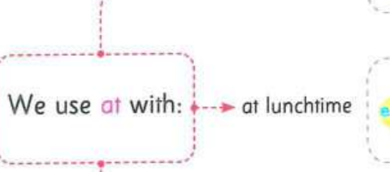
these	هؤلاء	those	أولئك	this	هذا / هذه
with	مع	mother	أم	father	أب
they	هم	other	آخر	clothes	ملابس
leather	جلد				



Language Focus

Prepositions of Time (on / at / in)

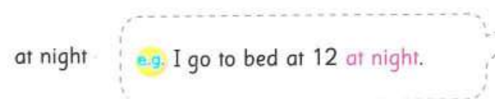


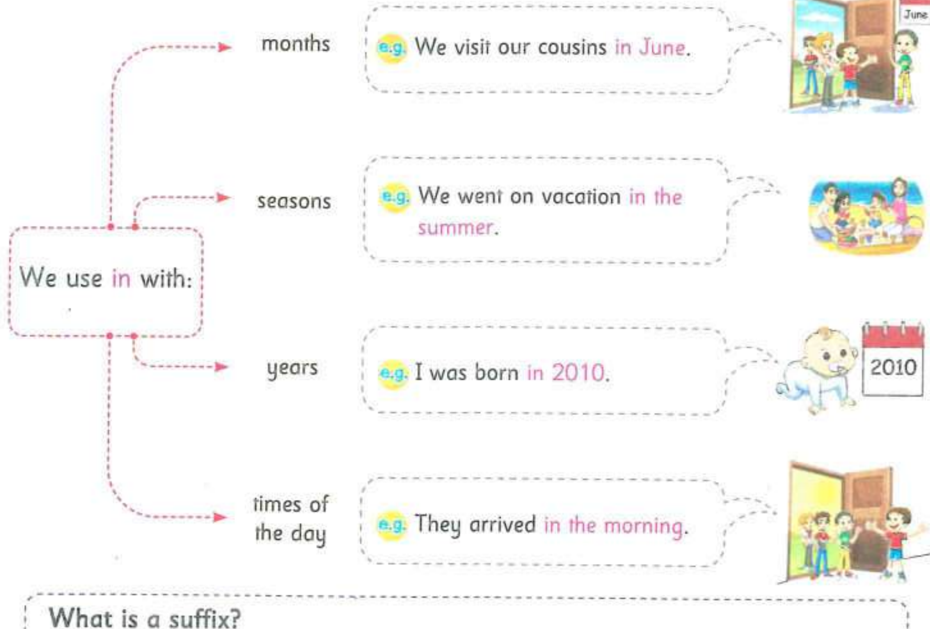


We use at with:

- times — e.g. Our flight lands at 8 pm.
- at lunchtime — e.g. We play basketball at lunchtime.
- at night — e.g. I go to bed at 12 at night.





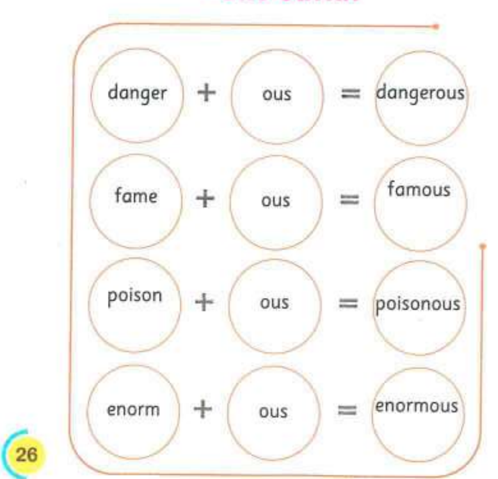



What is a suffix?
A suffix is a group of letters that comes at the end of a word to give it a new meaning.

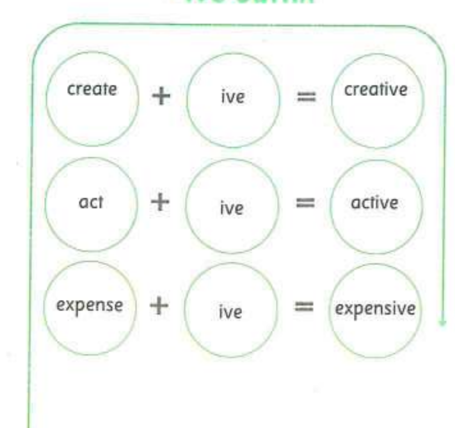
Some adjectives have common suffixes:



- ous suffix



- ive suffix



Exercises on Unit 11

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

A

1. You need a .... to travel to another country.
   a) swimming pool b) hotel c) passport d) tour guide
2. When we arrive, we can check into the city center ....
   a) swimming pool b) hotel c) passport d) suitcase
3. I feel tired. Let's sit on this .... under the tree.
   a) branch b) bench c) beach d) peach
4. We traveled to Jordan and swam in the .... Sea.
   a) Dead b) Red c) Mediterranean d) Blue

B

1. Ali needs to .... on vacation with his friends.
   a) make b) go c) visit d) have
2. We arrived in Amman and checked in to our ....
   a) hotel b) hospital c) shopping mall d) school
3. Be careful! Snakes are ....
   a) famous b) poisonous c) delicious d) generous
4. There's a huge .... on the roof of the hotel.
   a) swimming pool b) stream c) river d) hill

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

A

high – pool – theme – floor – relax

Samia is on a business trip in Singapore. She's got a lovely hotel room on the 42nd ....(1).......... . The view is beautiful and she can see the beach. There's a huge swimming ....(2).......... on the roof of the hotel. Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of ....(3)..........-rise buildings. There are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and ....(4).......... .



colored – raced – museum – traditional – snorkeling

I had a perfect vacation with my friends on the Red Sea. In the morning, we went to the beach to go ....(1).......... . We swam with the turtles and brightly ....(2).......... fish! In the afternoon, we ....(3).......... through the sand dunes in beach buggies! In the evening, we went to a ....(4).......... restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



1 play – at – They – tennis – 12 pm.

....

2 went – He – the summer – on – in – vacation.

....

3 hotel – We – a beautiful – stayed – in.

....

4 at – start – Does – class – 2 pm – your?

....

B

1 such – had – today – a cool – day – I.

....

2 drink – morning – I – the – milk – in.

....

3 We – Jordanian – had – traditional – food.

....

4 That – Be – poisonous – snake – careful! – is.

....





Unit 7

"My new apartment"

I moved to a new apartment two months ago. I really like this apartment because it's much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger with a modern oven. It's really easier to cook in. We have a bigger TV in the living room.

"My favorite room"

My favorite room is the bedroom. I share it with my younger sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is a small couch.

"My uncle the scientist"

My uncle is a scientist, and he likes animals. When he was young, he traveled a lot to South America for work. He loved it there. People were really friendly and helped him with his work. When I grow up, I want to be a scientist, too.

"Unusual homes"

I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online. It's upside down. It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light.

Unit 8

"How do my friends feel?"

I didn't have a good day at the club today. Five of my friends had problems. My friend Ahmed hurt his ankle at a football practice last night. Noha had an earache from swimming. And Lama had a toothache. She needs a dentist.



"Using honey as a treatment"

Honey isn't only a food. It can also be used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptians 5000 years ago. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can kill bacteria.

"Staying healthy"

It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. You should do some exercise every day. It's important to keep your body moving. Having enough sleep is good for your health, too.

Unit 9

"My trip to the wildlife park"

I had a wonderful day at the wildlife park yesterday. We saw many animals. We saw kangaroos. They are interesting. When they are little, they can sit in their mom's pouch. I saw penguins. They live in a special place that is cold.

"What could you do in the past?"

When I was young, I could ride a bike that had three wheels. My sister could climb trees and swim, too. I couldn't speak English when I was ten. Now I can speak two languages, English and French.

"My favorite unusual animal"

My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute. Its nickname is the sea cow. It spends hours eating from the sea bed every day. I think it's an amazing animal.

Unit 10

"Alexandria"

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, and museums. You can spend your time walking around its markets. There's even a beach that you can enjoy on hot days.



"New Alamein"

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. You can also visit the beautiful International Park or the Archeological Center if you want to learn about the history of the area.

"Our prefect town"

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to get in.

Unit 11

"My trip to Singapore"

I visited Singapore with my family last month. Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. There are flowers from all over the world in the Gardens by the Bay.

"My perfect vacation"

In the morning, we went to the beach to go snorkeling. We swam with the turtles and brightly-colored fish. In the afternoon, we raced through the sand dunes in the beach buggies. It was fun and fast.

"My trip to Paris"

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal.





March Monthly Exam




Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1 This week, we're talking about unusual .... at school.
(a. birds – d. foods – c. animals – d. plants)

2 My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the ....
(a. dugong – b. polar bear – c. fennec fox – d. sand cat)

3 The dugong has a .... face and it looks cute.
(a. scary – b. strange – c. ugly – d. friendly)

4 It spends hours eating .... from the sea bed.
(a. fish – b. grass – c. reefs – d. meat)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 When we bake the cake, we put it in the ....
a) elevator b) closet c) oven d) cushion

2 When someone is ...., they don't thank others for doing something good.
a) sorry b) ungrateful c) useless d) exhausted

3 Dad is having a .... in the bathroom right now.
a) television b) balcony c) shower d) closet

4 When you make a foolish mistake, you should ....
a) shout b) apologize c) pretend d) entertain

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

walls – papyrus – cooking – white – bricks

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, ...(1)........, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make ....(2)........ for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong ....(3)........ . Ancient Egyptians also wanted their homes to be cool. Some people painted their homes ....(4)........ to make them cooler.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Last Monday, Soha and Habiba went to the wildlife park with their friends. When they arrived, it was very hot in the park. They were surprised because it's such a hot weather in October. They saw lots of different animals and birds such as parrots, kangaroos, and penguins. Soha liked penguins the best. Penguins are her favorite birds. She thinks they look funny with their white and black feathers. Habiba liked pandas. They are huge with thick white and black fur. She liked how they eat bamboo plants. Soha and Habiba had a nice time.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 It was such a hot weather in the .... park.
a) wildlife b) theme c) city d) town

2 Parrots and penguins are ....
a) animals b) people c) birds d) parks

B Answer the following questions:

3 What do penguins look like? ....

4 What do pandas eat? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2)

1 snow – ice – Penguins – and – on – live.
....

2 drinking – tea – I – Egyptian – love – mint.
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 This book is so (bored) ....!

2 I .... (visit) Alexandria when I was a child.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

kangaroos live in australia. ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"My visit to the wildlife park"

stayed in the car – lots of animals and birds

....
....
....

April Monthly Exam

30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Alexandria is a really .... place to visit.
(a. boring – b. exciting – c. far – d. scary)

2 Alexandria is a big ....
(a. city – b. town – c. village – d. building)

3 There's even a .... that you can visit on hot days.
(a. store – b. museum – c. beach – d. restaurant)

4 You can spend ages walking around the ....
(a. shopping malls – b. restaurants – c. supermarkets – d. beaches)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 If you want to borrow a book, go to the ....
a) museum b) factory c) library d) square

2 You must visit the .... to try some of the local cuisine.
a) factory b) bank c) museum d) restaurant

3 You need a .... to travel to another country.
a) hotel b) passport c) tourist d) swimming pool

4 We bought some traditional handicrafts from the ....
a) airports b) hotels c) markets d) museums

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

market – beach – local – restaurant – ingredients

Hana has lived in Alexandria all her life. She owns a ....(1).............. here. You must visit her restaurant to try some of the ....(2).............. cuisine. They serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ....(3).............. . They have excellent supermarkets, but she prefers to buy her ingredients at the ....(4).............. in the old town.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history. I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum.



A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
a) a visit to the restaurant b) a visit to the museum
c) a visit to the zoo d) a visit to the library

2 It took a/an .... to reach our destination.
a) month b) week c) day d) hour

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did you do when you arrived? ....

4 How was Saleh (the tour guide) kind? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 on – Nadia – goes – Mondays – swimming.

....

2 the – do – How – I – get to – shopping mall?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 We (check in) .... a hotel when we arrived in Amman.

2 The flight landed (on) .... 4:00 pm yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

It often rains in london ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"New Alamein"

14 kilometers long – The Archaeological Center

....

....

....

PART 4 Final Exams









1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Honey has been used by doctors for .... of years.
(a. tens – b. ones – c. hundreds – d. thousands)

2 It was first used to treat wounds by .... doctors.
(a. Egyptians – b. Italians – c. Chinese – d. British)

3 Egyptians used honey as a treatment around .... years ago.
(a. 2000 – b. 3000 – c. 5000 – d. 7000)

4 Honey is .... for healing wounds and treating illnesses.
(a. bad – b. good – c. terrible – d. awful)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 There is an oven in the ....
a) bathroom b) bedroom c) living room d) kitchen

2 .... live on snow and rice.
a) Parrots b) Kangaroos c) Penguins d) Lions

3 Salma went to the train .... to book a ticket for tomorrow's train.
a) museum b) station c) library d) monument

4 Take the .... to the ninth floor. The office is on the left.
a) balcony b) bedroom c) cushion d) elevator

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

wall – closet – share – next – middle

I love my bedroom. I ....(1)........ it with my sister. On the right is my bed with a desk ....(2)........ to it. On the left is my sister's bed. In the ....(3)........ of the room there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the ....(4)........ there are lots of posters of animals.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruits and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. Here are some other tips we can use to look after our health. It's important to do some exercise every day. It's really useful to keep your body moving. Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise. Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. When you get enough sleep, your brain functions in a better way. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Playing .... is a good way to exercise.
a) videos games b) chess c) cards d) sports

2 You should get around .... hours of sleep every night.
a) two b) five c) eight d) twenty

B Answer the following questions:

3 What should you eat to be healthy? ....

4 How can enough sleep help our bodies? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 is – town – This – our – perfect.
....

2 go – did – Where – you – yesterday?
....

6 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 I'm (visit) .... Alexandria from Germany.

2 (not waste) .... your time.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

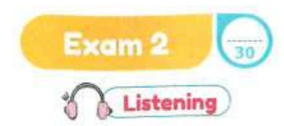
I moved to alexandria last year ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Furniture in Ancient Egypt"

very different – reed mats

....
....
....



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 We arrived in Amman on ....
(a. Friday – b. Sunday – c. Monday – d. Wednesday)
2 It was such warm weather in ....
(a. August – b. September – c. October – d. November)
3 We went from the airport to the .... in a taxi.
(a. restaurant – b. hotel – c. station – d. museum)
4 We had .... at the Memphis restaurant in the city center.
(a. lunch – b. drink – c. dinner – d. breakfast)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Nader is .... Bad things happens to him without a reason.
a) unfriendly b) unlucky c) unsafe d) unfair
2 Huda has a/an .... from swimming. Her ears really hurt.
a) sore throat b) cough c) earache d) backache
3 In Ancient Egypt, there were large .... for storing crops.
a) mats b) ovens c) pots d) papyrus
4 Salma is .... She's feeling a bit low.
a) happy b) sad c) excited d) amazed

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

nuts – meeting – trunk – shelter – breeze

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its ....(1).......... was very wide, and it had many green branches. It gave ....(2).......... and rest to hundreds of travelers as they traveled across the country. It gave shade and cold ....(3).......... to travelers. People used it as a ....(4).......... point.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Hello, my name is Hassan. I live in a perfect town near the Nile. In my perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to my school. You can see lots of animals and birds there. You can feed some of them, too. The weather in my town is usually hot in the summer, so there is a big waterpark that is always open. It costs five Egyptian pounds to get in. There are many parks along the Nile in my town. You can enjoy having picnics or sitting in the green areas. You can even take a boat trip on the Nile. I love my town.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 You can feed the animals in the ....
a) park b) Nile c) zoo d) waterpark
2 It gets really .... in Hassan's town in the summer.
a) cold b) rainy c) warm d) hot

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Hassan live? ....
4 What can you do in the parks along the Nile? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 feel – you – do – How?
....
2 living room – a television – We – the – in – have.
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 When she (be) .... two, she could use the tablet.
2 (not run), ... and walk slowly.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

nada is very friendly ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"New Alamein"

What tourist attractions can you see there? – How long is its beach?

....
....
....

Exam 3 (30)



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1 My uncle is a .... and he loves animals.
(a. vet – b. teacher – c. scientist – d. doctor)

2 When he was younger, he traveled to .... America.
(a. North – b. South – c. West – d. East)

3 People in South America are ....
(a. friendly – b. healthy – c. old – d. bad)

4 My uncle was interested in ....
(a. bears – b. kangaroos – c. birds – d. monkeys)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 When something is ...., we can't use it.
a) foolish b) ungrateful c) useless d) comfortable

2 Mona have a strong .... Her head hurts.
a) cold b) headache c) backache d) earache

3 I .... a bedroom with my sister.
a) do b) share c) give d) work

4 In Ancient Egypt, there were .... to sit and sleep on.
a) reed mats b) papyrus c) wooden boxes d) large pots

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

relaxed – checked – Museum – Citadel – Dead

We went to Jordan on vacation. We arrived in Amman and ....(1)........ into our hotel in the middle of the city. The next day, we visited the famous Amman ....(2)........ . We also explored the Roman Amphitheater, and the Archaeological ....(3)........ . We also had plans to go to the ....(4)........ Sea. No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Honey isn't only used as food. It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help kill bacteria. This can help to stop wounds from getting infected, and it also helps wounds to heal more quickly. So, if you have a jar of honey, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Honey can be used as food and ....
a) treatment b) infection c) wound d) injury

2 Some types of honey can kill ....
a) insects b) bacteria c) animals d) birds

B Answer the following questions:

3 How did Egyptian doctors use honey? ....

4 How can you use honey to make your cough better? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2)

1 to – you – do – get – school – How?
....

2 wrote – Sama – to – an email – Heba.
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 I tried to speak French, but I (cannot) .... say anything.

2 My sister Noha is such a (create) .... girl.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

reda and his friends talked about sports ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"My apartment"

big and wide – modern oven in the kitchen

....
....
....





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 I love anything to do with ....
(a. science – b. history – c. math – d. geography)

2 I'm going to visit the ...., so today is a special day.
(a. hotel – b. station – c. library – d. museum)

3 The .... ride wasn't too bad.
(a. bus – b. car – c. taxi – d. train)

4 It took a/an .... to reach our destination.
(a. hour – b. minute – c. day – d. week)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 The upside-down house is .... They use air, water and sun to make energy.
a) geological b) ecological c) illogical d) musical

2 I have a/an .... I think some honey and lemon would help.
a) headache b) sore throat c) sunburn d) cut knee

3 In Ancient Egypt, there were .... to sit and sleep on.
a) baskets b) pots c) reed mats d) gardens

4 My friend is .... in reading. He has many books.
a) bored b) dangerous c) interested d) frightened

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

restaurants – palace – River – rains – attractions

London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often ....(1).......... here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a red bus ride and visit tourist ....(2).......... . You can take a relaxing boat trip on the ....(3).......... Thames. When you feel hungry, there are plenty of ....(4).......... to choose from.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

My name's Samy, and I've got two brothers, Nagy and Hesham. Our favorite day of the week is Friday. We all get up at about 9 o'clock and have breakfast. Then we watch TV. At about 2 o'clock, we go to the park near our house. We ride our bikes there. After that, we all go home and have lunch. In the evening, I often play football in the street with my friends. I like football, but Nagy and Hesham love basketball.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "there" refers to the ....
a) house b) park c) street d) school

2 Samy's favorite sport is ....
a) basketball b) football c) handball d) volleyball

B Answer the following questions:

3 When do the three boys wake up? ....

4 Where do the three boys have lunch? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 likes – Dalia – about – blogging – things – different.
....

2 by – plane – to – travels – He – England.
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 There (be) .... many exciting things to do in Alamein.

2 (not be) .... late for the meeting tomorrow.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

when did Rehab buy her car ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"My favorite animal"

lives – wonderful

....





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 I love my bedroom and I share it with my ....
(a. sister – b. cousin – c. brother – d. father)

2 On the ...., there's my bed with an armchair next to it.
(a. left – b. right – c. middle – d. wall)

3 On the left, there is my brother's ....
(a. closet – b. bed – c. desk – d. clothes)

4 There is a big .... on the wall.
(a. picture – b. poster – c. painting – d. TV)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian ....
a) reader b) traveler c) climber d) footballer

2 He had a/an .... He went to the dentist.
a) headache b) toothache c) sore throat d) earache

3 A .... is a little wind.
a) trunk b) breeze c) branch d) leave

4 She runs on the road. It's really ....
a) unfair b) unsafe c) unlucky d) unhappy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

metal – wooden – mats – pots – papyrus

The furniture in Ancient Egypt homes was very different from today. There were reed ....(1).......... to sit and sleep on. They used ....(2).......... to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large ....(3).......... and baskets for storing crops. There were also ....(4).......... boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.





Reem

Dear Diary,
I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Reem had a cool day at ....
a) France b) Alexandria c) England d) Cairo

2 French people could understand Reem when she spoke ....
a) Arabic b) Italian c) English d) French

B Answer the following questions:

3 What famous sights did Reem see? ....

4 What did Reem do at the end of the day? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 dugong – unusual – is – animal – the – My favorite.
....
2 could – when – Ola – read – was – three – she.
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 No, she (not have) .... a sore throat.
2 Last year, I (cannot) .... use the computer.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

What's the matter, dina ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Your town"

exciting places – a lot of parks

....
....
....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 No visit to .... is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea.
(a. Egypt – b. Jordan – c. Qatar – d. London)

2 You are able to .... on the water of the Dead Sea.
(a. run – b. walk – c. float – d. fly)

3 The Dead Sea .... is good for your skin.
(a. salt – b. mud – c. sand – d. water)

4 I think I will visit the Dead Sea again next ....
(a. year – b. week – c. month – d. morning)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 She went to the dentist because she had a/an ....
a) cough b) cold c) earache d) toothache

2 Meet me at the .... I will put some money in my account.
a) square b) factory c) bank d) library

3 Don't run from behind a car. That's ....
a) unfriendly b) unsafe c) unhappy d) unfair

4 The .... of the Ancient Egyptian homes were the coolest part of the house.
a) roofs b) doors d) rooms d) gardens

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

windows – blogging – landscape – upside – farmhouse

Dalida found this unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's ....(1).......... down. It is actually an old ....(2).......... which people are changing to make it modern. It works very well because all the ....(3).......... are at the top, so you get a lot of light. The house fits well with the ....(4).......... which is farms and fields.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a big beach. Lily is visiting Alexandria from Germany. She has been to many museums since her first day in Alexandria. She has been to Alexandria Library, too. She thinks it's the biggest library in the world. She likes sitting on the roof garden of her hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea, and chatting with other people.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Lily is visiting Alexandria from ....
a) Egypt b) Germany c) France d) Italy

2 Lily thinks Alexandria .... is the biggest in the world.
a) Hotel b) Museum c) Beach d) Library

B Answer the following questions:

3 What can you see and do in Alexandria? ....

4 What does Lily like doing in the hotel? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 is – the right – There – a park – on.
....

2 can – but – Penguins – fly, – can't – they – swim.
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 The mud bricks (make) .... very strong walls.

2 Mona (come) .... to Cairo when she was five.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

i cut my knee last week ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Honey"

for breakfast – kill bacteria

....
....
....





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Eating healthy food such as .... and vegetables helps us have a balanced diet.
(a. fries – b. sweets – c. fruits – d. cakes)
2 It's also .... to do exercise.
(a. useless – b. useful – c. boring – d. helpless)
3 Having enough .... is important as well.
(a. clothes – b. sleep – c. games – d. money)
4 We should have between .... and nine hours every night.
(a. two – b. ten – c. eight – d. five)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 "...................." is medical care to help you get better.
a) Wound b) Bandage c) Treatment d) Injury
2 She ate some ....
a) shelters b) chariots c) nuts d) branches
3 .... are black and white. They live in China.
a) Bats b) Lions c) Penguins d) Pandas
4 Mona has a headache. Some .... can help.
a) sunscreen b) pills c) honey d) bandages

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

mint – cuisine – roof – cool – museums

Hi, my name is Jens. I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really ....(1).......... here. I think there are some good ....(2).........., but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the ....(3).......... garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian ....(4).......... tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

My name is Ola. I live in a big apartment with my family in New Alamein. New Alamein is a new Egyptian city. It's a wonderful place with many tourist attractions. The International Park is a very famous place to visit. There is also a large lake, a theme park, and shopping malls. The beach is over 14 kilometers long. The Archaeological Center is my favorite place to visit. There are some amazing treasures there. You can learn about the fascinating history of the area.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ola lives in a/an .... Egyptian city.
a) new b) old c) ancient d) past
2 The .... is Ola's favorite place to visit.
a) International Park b) lake
c) Archaeological Center d) beach

B Answer the following questions:

3 How long is the beach in New Alamein? ....
4 What can you do at the Archaeological Center? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 under – tree – the – travelers – The – rested.
....
2 was – could – When – I – little, – run – I.
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 Dad was (surprise) .... when I gave him the present.
2 (to turn) .... on the oven, please.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

the plane to singapore leaves at ten. ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Alexandria"

exciting place – beach

....
....
....



30

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 In Ancient Egypt, people made their homes .... the Nile.
(a. in – b. on – c. under – d. near)

2 They used the Nile's .... for drinking and cooking.
(a. mud – b. papyrus – c. water – d. plants)

3 They used mud from the river to make ....
(a. beds – b. bricks – c. chairs – d. windows)

4 Some people painted their homes .... to make them cooler.
(a. white – b. black – c. gray – d. blue)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 A .... is an injury that damages your skin.
a) treatment b) wound c) bacteria d) substance

2 His brother died last week, so he was ....
a) happy b) nice c) unhappy d) pleased

3 .... are very big, strong cats that live in Africa.
a) Lions b) Snails c) Parrots d) Dolphins

4 I love ...., I play basketball once a week.
a) sports b) toys c) reading d) music

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

sad – excited – birds – colorful – parrot

Last month, Habiba went to the wildlife park with her friends. She saw lots of animals and ....(1).......... like parrots and penguins. She saw her favorite bird, the ....(2).......... . She likes its ....(3).......... feathers. She was a bit ....(4).......... because she didn't see the bats. Maybe she will see them next time.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

New Alamein is a beautiful city. There are many exciting things in it. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it is hot. The beautiful beach is 14 kms long. There is also a large lake in it. You can also visit the beautiful International Park. You can visit the Archaeological Center if you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area. There are some amazing treasures there.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "large" means ....
a) clean b) tiny c) small d) big

2 New Alamein is on the .... by the sea.
a) beach b) desert c) park d) lake

B Answer the following questions:

3 What can you learn about at the Archaeological Center? ....

4 How long is the beach of the city? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 can – but – Penguins – fly, – can't – they – swim.
....

2 is – way – a good – Playing – to exercise – sport.
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 Snails (not have) .... legs or arms.

2 She looked (bore) .... when she watched the show.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

Mona and heba went to the park ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"My favorite animals"

Where do they live? – What do they look like?

....
....
....





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 This week, Dalida is writing about unusual ....
(a. roads – b. homes – c. animals – d. birds)

2 Dalida's mom is a/an ....
(a. engineer – b. teacher – c. banker – d. architect)

3 She found this unusual house in the Netherlands ....
(a. online – b. offline – c. on newspaper – d. on TV)

4 It's an old .... that people are changing to make it modern.
(a. farmhouse – b. houseboat – c. lighthouse – d. barn)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 .... swim in groups with my family in the ocean.
a) Parrots b) Penguin c) Dolphin d) Kangaroo

2 The view from the .... is wonderful.
a) oven b) elevator c) balcony d) armchair

3 There is so much .... in the Dead Sea that makes you float.
a) sugar b) salt c) flour d) fish

4 Rana keeps a/an .... to write down things that happen each day.
a) book b) email c) diary d) notebook

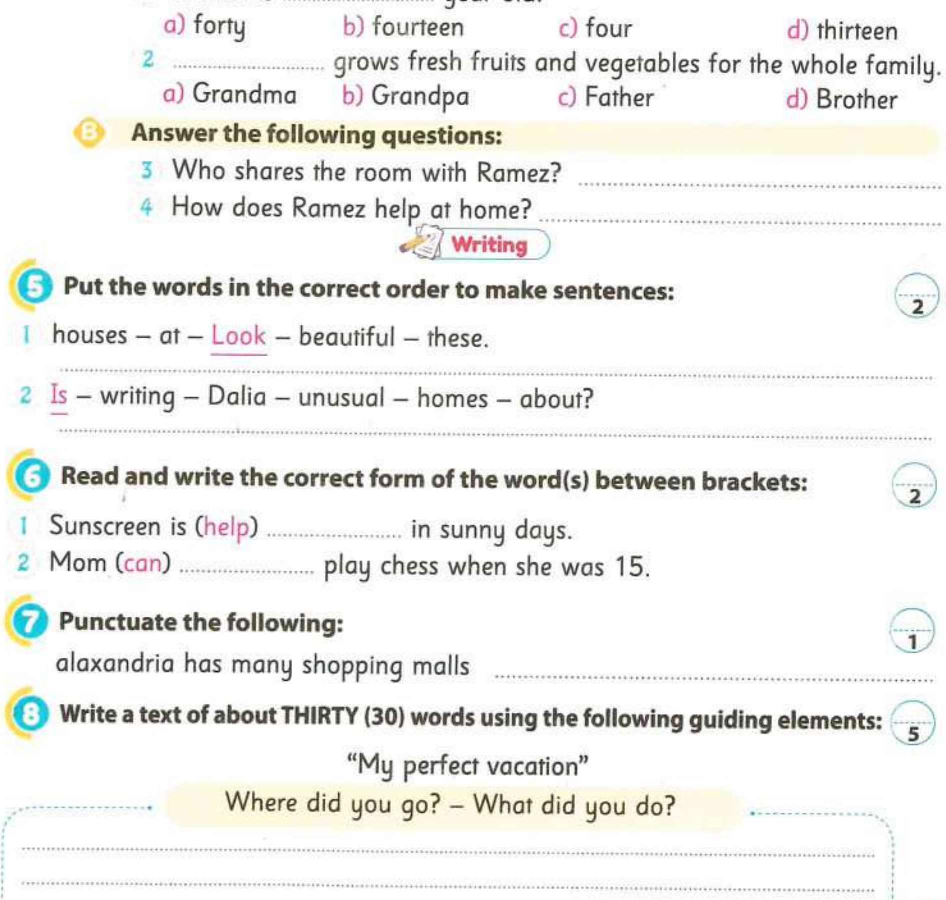
3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

patients – injections – classrooms – relatives – teachers

In Bangalore, staff from the hospital turn the corridors into ....(1).......... . The nurses become ....(2).......... and the family become the students. This helps the families to care for their ....(3).......... when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many ....(4).......... return to the hospital now.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Ramez is 14 years old. He lives in a big house with his big family. There is a big garden where his grandpa grows fresh fruits and vegetables for the whole family to eat. Ramez helps his grandpa look after the garden. He also helps his grandma feed the ducks to sell in the market. They get good money from selling these ducks. They have three bedrooms. Ramez shares the room with his three brothers. He even shares the bed with his brother Ragab. They also have a small kitchen and a big bathroom. They live happily in their house with its beautiful green landscape around.



A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ramez is .... year old.
a) forty b) fourteen c) four d) thirteen

2 .... grows fresh fruits and vegetables for the whole family.
a) Grandma b) Grandpa c) Father d) Brother

B Answer the following questions:

3 Who shares the room with Ramez? ....

4 How does Ramez help at home? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 houses – at – Look – beautiful – these.
....

2 Is – writing – Dalia – unusual – homes – about?
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 Sunscreen is (help) .... in sunny days.

2 Mom (can) .... play chess when she was 15.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

alaxandria has many shopping malls ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"My perfect vacation"

Where did you go? – What did you do?

....
....
....

Exam 10

30

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 I moved to a new apartment last ....

(a. evening – b. month – c. week – d. year)

2 There are .... big bedrooms in our apartment.

(a. two – b. three – c. four – d. five)

3 I share the .... with my brother.

(a. kitchen – b. bathroom – c. bedroom – d. living room)

4 The view in the balcony is ....

(a. great – b. bad – c. boring – d. awful)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 You can put a .... on your cut knee.

a) lemon b) sunscreen c) pills d) bandages

2 There is a big oven in the ....

a) kitchen b) bathroom c) living room d) bedroom

3 The .... lives in China and eats bamboo.

a) lion b) kangaroo c) panda d) parrot

4 Amira packed her .... for her trip to Aswan.

a) ticket b) suitcase c) passport d) sunglasses

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

beach – treasures – International – lake – Center

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the ....(1).......... so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. There is also a large, green ....(2).......... right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful ....(3).......... Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

I live in a perfect town near the Nile. In my town, there is a big zoo. You can see lots of animals and birds there. The weather is usually hot in summer, so there is a big water park. It is always open. There are many parks by the Nile in my town. You can have picnics in the green areas. You can have a boat trip on the Nile. I love my town.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "there" refers to the ....

a) park b) Nile c) zoo d) water park

2 The weather is usually .... in summer.

a) cold b) hot c) cool d) warm

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where can you have picnics? ....

4 Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

1 apartment – I – a big – live – in.

....

2 important – food – healthy – Is it – to eat?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

1 (to do) .... your homework again, Adel.

2 This car looks very (expense) ....

7 Punctuate the following:

1

The penguins can t fly ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Your favorite animal"

in the zoo – amazing animal

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes ....
(a. cool – b. hot – c. warm – d. small)

2 The .... helped them do so.
(a. pots – b. windows – c. mud bricks – d. mats)

3 Egyptian homes had .... roofs.
(a. no – b. round – c. flat – d. oval)

4 Families often relaxed and slept on the .... on hot nights.
(a. roofs – b. gardens – c. walls – d. rooms)

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 He is a .... He works in a school.
a) teacher b) farmer c) climber d) traveler

2 My town was .... with people.
a) interested b) crowded c) annoyed d) bored

3 Nahla puts her clothes in the ....
a) shower b) oven c) closet d) armchair

4 Penguins can swim, but they can't ....
a) walk b) run c) fly d) see

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

picnics – free – waterpark – classes – market

In my town, there is a big zoo next to the school. We can go there after ....(1)....... . It is really hot in our town, so there is a ....(2)....... that is always open. There is a wonderful ....(3)....... that sells all kinds of delicious food. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family .... (4)............ in the shade.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

My name is Mona. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love this new apartment. It is much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. It's much easier to cook in. The living room is bigger than the old one, so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister Dalia, but our bedroom is really big. I like our new apartment.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Mona moved to a new .... last week.
a) school b) class c) apartment d) city

2 We cook food in the ....
a) apartment b) bedroom c) television d) oven

B Answer the following questions:

3 How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment? ....

4 What is the name of Mona's sister? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 you – an earache – Do – have?
....

2 see – beautiful – I – singing – can – birds.
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 The baby's voice was loud and (annoy) ....

2 Manal could swim when she (be) .... five.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

she cut her knee last week ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"A wonderful day"

Where did you go yesterday? – What did you see?

....
....
....

Al-Azhar Exams






1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



1. I moved into a new (school – apartment – town).
2. We have three (living rooms – bedrooms – bathrooms – kitchens).
3. There are (one – two – three) bathrooms.



2 Read and complete the dialogue:



island – Singapore – did – vacation

Mom : Where did you go on your ....(1)..........?

Nadia : We were in India last week. This week, we are in ....(2).......... .

Mom : What ....(3).......... you do there?

Nadia : We went on a boat trip to an ....(4).......... .



3 Read the text and answer the questions:



Last Monday, Soha and Habiba went to the wildlife park with their friends. When they arrived, it was very hot in the park. It was around 40 degrees. They were lucky to have their hats. They saw lots of different animals and birds, such as parrots, kangaroos, and penguins. Soha liked penguins the best. She thinks they look funny with their white and black feathers. Habiba liked pandas. They are huge, with thick white and black fur. Habiba liked how they eat bamboo plants. Soha and Habiba had a nice time.

A Choose the correct word:

1. The main idea of the text is about (the wildlife park – pandas – penguins).
2. Parrots and penguins are (animals – people – birds).
3. Soha liked (parrots – penguins – pandas) the best.

B Answer the following questions:

4. Where did Soha and Habiba go? ....
5. What did Habiba like about the pandas? ....



4 Choose the correct answer:



1. I (visited – visit – visits) my grandma yesterday.
2. Honey helps wounds to (grow – heal – keep) more quickly.
3. Let's (meeting – meets – meet) on Monday at seven.
4. My head hurts, I have a/an (headache – stomachache – earache).
5. Be careful, snakes are (poison – poisonous – poisoned).

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:



1. sore – a – I – throat – have.
....
2. like – you – Do – here – living?
....
3. blogging – likes – things – about – She – different.
....
4. furniture – The – Egypt – in Ancient – very – was – different.
....
5. got – room – a lovely – We've – hotel.
....





1 Listen and choose the correct answer:



1. Sarah likes (swimming – running – blogging).
2. This week Sarah is writing about (ancient – new – unusual) homes.
3. The unusual house is in (Egypt – the Netherlands – America).

B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:



nickname – unusual – Why – dugong

Tamer : What's your favorite ....(1).............. animal?

Amir : The ....(2).............. from Egypt.

Tamer : ....(3).............. is it unusual?

Amir : It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its ....(4).............. is the sea cow.



3 Read the text and answer the questions:



I live in a house near the mountains. I have two brothers and one sister. My father teaches math and my mother is a nurse in a big hospital. My brothers are very smart and work hard at school. My sister is a nervous girl, but she is very kind. My grandmother also lives with us. She came from China when I was two years old. She is very old. She cooks the best food. My brother and I like to go on long walks in the mountains.



A Choose the correct word:

1. The text is about (a family – neighbors – friends).
2. I live in a house near the (farms – gardens – mountains).
3. My father teaches (Arabic – English – math).

B Answer the following questions:

4. Where did the grandmother come from? ....
5. Where does the mother work? ....



4 Choose the correct answer:



1. (Do – Can – Could) you ride a bike when you were three?
2. Please, (to put – put – puts) the cake in the oven.
3. Kareem has a/an (stomachache – headache – earache), he can't hear well.
4. Hana puts her clothes in the (cushion – elevator – closet).
5. (Treatment – Wound – Heal) means to get better.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:



1. birds – What – you – did – see?
....
2. be – tomorrow – Don't – late!
....
3. doing – I'm – on – school – a project – bats – at.
....
4. don't – legs – arms – Snails – have – or.
....
5. Lama – have – a – Does – toothache?
....

TAPE SCRIPTS



March Monthly Exam

This week we're talking about unusual animals at school. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. It has a very friendly face. It looks cute. Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

April Monthly Exam

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach that you can visit on hot days. There are shopping malls, too. You can spend ages walking around them.

Final Exams

Exam 1

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

Exam 2

We arrived in Amman on Monday. It was about 26 degrees, and we were surprised. It was such warm weather in October. We went from the airport to the hotel in a taxi. Our rooms were very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center.

Exam 3

My uncle is a scientist, and he loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot to South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups.

Exam 4

Today was the best day ever. I love anything to do with history – I'm going to visit the museum, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way, and the time went by quite quickly.

Exam 5

I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother Hany. It's really big. On the right, there is my bed with an armchair next to it. On the left, there's my brother's bed. In the middle of the room, there is a desk with two wooden chairs. There is a big TV on the wall.

Exam 6

No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin. I think I will visit the Dead Sea again next year.



Exam 7

It's really important to have a healthy lifestyle. Eating healthy food such as fruits and vegetables helps us have a balanced diet. It's also useful to do exercise every day. Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise. Having enough sleep is important as well. Experts say we should have between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

Exam 8

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler.

Exam 9

Hi! My name's Dalida. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern.

Exam 10

I moved to a new apartment with my family last month. My dad had a new job and we had to move. I wasn't excited at first but now I think it's fine. The apartment has three big bedrooms. I share my bedroom with my brother. There is a big living room with TV on the wall. The balcony is my favorite place. the view there is great.

Exam 11

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

Al-Azhar Exams

Al-Azhar Exam 1

I moved into a new apartment with my family. It is very big. We have three bedrooms now. There are two bathrooms and a fantastic balcony.

Al-Azhar Exam 2

Sarah likes blogging about different things. This week she's writing about unusual homes. She found an unusual house in the Netherlands online – it's upside down!

